Estimating Low Generalized Coloring Numbers of Planar Graphs
by

Ahlam Almulhim

A Dissertation Presented in Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements for the Degree Doctor of Philosophy

Approved April 2020 by the
Graduate Supervisory Committee:
Henry Kierstead, Chair
Andrzej Czygrinow
Susanna Fishel
Arunabha Sen
Andrea Richa

## ARIZONA STATE UNIVERSITY

May 2020


#### Abstract

The chromatic number $\chi(G)$ of a graph $G=(V, E)$ is the minimum number of colors needed to color $V(G)$ such that no adjacent vertices receive the same color. The coloring number $\operatorname{col}(G)$ of a graph $G$ is the minimum number $k$ such that there exists a linear ordering of $V(G)$ for which each vertex has at most $k-1$ backward neighbors. It is well known that the coloring number is an upper bound for the chromatic number. The weak $r$-coloring number $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G)$ is a generalization of the coloring number, and it was first introduced by Kierstead and Yang [23]. The weak $r$-coloring number wcol $_{r}(G)$ is the minimum integer $k$ such that for some linear ordering $L$ of $V(G)$ each vertex $v$ can reach at most $k-1$ other smaller vertices $u$ (with respect to $L$ ) with a path of length at most $r$ and $u$ is the smallest vertex in the path. This dissertation proves that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G) \leq 23$ for every planar graph $G$.

The exact distance-3 graph $G^{[t 4]}$ of a graph $G=(V, E)$ is a graph with $V$ as its set of vertices, and $x y \in E\left(G^{[t b]}\right)$ if and only if the distance between $x$ and $y$ in $G$ is 3. This dissertation improves the best known upper bound of the chromatic number of the exact distance-3 graphs $G^{[63]}$ of planar graphs $G$, which is 105 , to 95 . It also improves the best known lower bound, which is 7 , to 9 .

A class of graphs is nowhere dense if for every $r \geq 1$ there exists $t \geq 1$ such that no graph in the class contains a topological minor of the complete graph $K_{t}$ where every edge is subdivided at most $r$ times. This dissertation gives a new characterization of nowhere dense classes using generalized notions of the domination number.


## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I cannot put into words how I feel upon reaching this point of my PhD journey. I am happy that it is almost the end of five-year program, and I am grateful for every person who helped me to turn this goal into reality.

I am thankful for my advisor Professor Henry Kierstead for his support and encouragement ever since the first year of the program. The first graph theory course I had in my life was given by Professor Kierstead; I liked this course so much and it had an impact on choosing this subject area. I would like to thank Professor Kierstead for introducing me to interesting problems in graph theory and for suggesting the right tools at the right time. I am lucky that I had an advisor who combines both knowledge and kindness.

I would also like to thank my dissertation committee members Professor Czygrinow, Professor Fishel, Professor Sen and Professor Richa for their help during my time at Arizona State University.

I give my sincere thanks to my beloved husband Mohammed for his sacrifice and unlimited support throughout this journey. I would like to thank my kids Azzam, Bader, Maryam and Omar who added joy to my study; thank you kids for being patient too. I would like to thank my mother Latifah for her prayers and support, my father Ghaith and my siblings.

My special gratitude goes to the government of Saudi Arabia and King Faisal University for offering me a generous scholarship to study at Arizona State University.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page
LIST OF TABLES ..... v
LIST OF FIGURES ..... vi
CHAPTER
1 INTRODUCTION ..... 1
1.1 Generalized Coloring Numbers ..... 3
1.1.1 Game Coloring Numbers ..... 8
1.1.2 Star chromatic Numbers ..... 9
1.1.3 Degenerate Coloring Numbers ..... 10
1.2 Path Decomposition for Planar Graphs ..... 11
1.3 Distance-r-coloring Numbers ..... 16
1.4 Exact Distance Graphs ..... 17
1.5 Nowhere Dense Classes and Classes with Bounded Expansion ..... 21
1.5.1 Poset Dimension ..... 22
1.5.2 Sparse Neighborhood Covers ..... 23
1.5.3 The $k$-domination Numbers ..... 24
2 ON THE WEAK 2-COLORING NUMBER OF PLANAR GRAPHS ..... 27
2.1 Isometric-path Decomposition $\mathscr{P}$ ..... 27
2.2 The ordering $L$ ..... 29
2.3 Example ..... 31
2.4 Proof of Theorem 2.0.1 ..... 34
3 ON THE CHROMATIC NUMBER OF THE EXACT DISTANCE-3 GRAPHS OF PLANAR GRAPHS ..... 42
3.1 Proof of Theorem 3.0.1 ..... 43
CHAPTER ..... Page
3.2 Lower Bound ..... 60
4 GENERALIZED COLORING NUMBERS OF PLANAR GRAPHS ..... 64
4.1 Breadth-first Trees ..... 64
4.2 Bounds on the Strong $r$-coloring Numbers of Planar Graphs ..... 65
4.2.1 Construction of $L$ ..... 66
4.2.2 Properties of $L$ ..... 67
4.3 Bounds on $\mathrm{wcol}_{2}[G, L]$ ..... 70
4.3.1 Upper Bound ..... 70
4.3.2 Example ..... 89
5 A NEW CHARACTERIZATION OF NOWHERE DENSE CLASSES ..... 96
REFERENCES ..... 100

## LIST OF TABLES

TablePage1. Upper Bounds for $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{i}\right|$ ..... 59

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure ..... Page
1.1. Paths Decomposition of Width at Most 2 ..... 14
2.1. $P_{a}$ the Strong Parent of $P_{i}$ and $P_{b}$ the Weak Parent of $P_{i}$ ..... 30
2.2. A Planar Graph $G$ and an Ordering $L{\text { Satisfying } \text { wcol }_{2}[G, L]=23 \text {. The }}_{\text {. }}$. Ordering $L$ Is Represented by the Purple Numbers ..... 32
2.3. $\quad V(D) \subseteq P_{f} \cup P_{h}$ ..... 35
2.4. $v_{k}=v_{k}^{\prime}, D_{4}^{\prime}$ Is the Brown Cycle in Claim 2.4.7 ..... 38
2.5. $\quad D_{4}^{\prime}$ Is the Brown Cycle in the First Drawing, the Second Drawing Illustrates the Possible Neighbors of $v^{-}$If $v^{-}=r_{k}$ ..... 39
2.6. $y$ and $y^{\prime}$ ..... 41
3.1. $p_{j}, j \in B$ ..... 45
3.2. $v \in O_{h, 1}, O_{h, 1}$ Is the Interior of $D_{h, 1}=v_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime} w_{h}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h} v_{h}$ ..... 47
3.3. $v \in O_{h, 2}, O_{h, 2}$ Is the Interior of $D_{h, 2}=z_{h} P_{f} z_{h}^{\prime} w_{h}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h} z_{h}$ ..... 51
3.4. The Brown Cycle Is $C^{\prime}$ in Claim 3.1.11 and the Cyan Cycle Is $C^{\prime \prime}$ in Claim 3.1.13 ..... 52
3.5. The Cyan Cycle Is $C^{\prime}$ in Claim 3.1.19 and the Brown Cycle Is $C^{\prime \prime}$ in Claim 3.1.20 ..... 58
3.6. The Graph $F$ ..... 61
3.7. The Outerplanar Graph $G$ ..... 62
3.8. Part of the Construction of $G$ in (b) ..... 63
4.1. $f(u), e_{u}, P_{a}(u), P_{b}(u)$ and $P_{c}(u)$ ..... 68
4.2. The Three Major Cases of Theorem 4.3.1 ..... 71
4.3. $G^{\prime}\left[A^{\prime} \cup\left\{c, w_{1}, w_{2}\right\}\right]$ ..... 90
4.4. The Subtree $T^{\prime}\left[A^{\prime}\right]$ and the Ordering $\leq_{T^{\prime}}$ ..... 92


4.7. $f(w)$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . ~ 94$

4.9. $f\left(z^{\prime}\right), f(u), \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right]$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . \ldots . \ldots$

## Chapter 1

## INTRODUCTION

In 1852, Francis Guthrie asked wether every map can be colored with four colors so that no two adjacent regions have the same color. The answer is affirmative and this very famous fact is known as the Four Color Theorem. The first accepted proof was given by Appel and Haken in 1977. Thirty-seven years ago, Steven J. Brams invented the Map-Coloring Game hoping to find a game-theoretic proof of the Four Color Theorem. Even though his approach was not successful, we are left with an interesting map-coloring game.

The Map-Coloring Problem is illustrated as follows. Suppose that Alice and Bob, with Alice playing first, are coloring the regions of a map alternatively, using four colors, so that no adjacent regions receive the same color. Alice wins the game if every region receives a color, Bob wins the game otherwise, i.e., Bob wins the game if at some point during the game there is an uncolored region and all the four colors are used to color its neighbors. Steven J. Brams was trying to find a strategy for Alice to win the game no matter how Bob plays. Unfortunately, such a strategy does not exist. Scientists came up with several maps and strategies for Bob to win the game no matter how Alice plays. It was then natural to ask what is the smallest number of colors for which Alice has a winning strategy. In the context of general graphs, this number is called the game chromatic number $\chi_{g}(G)$ of a graph $G$, as every map can be viewed as a graph with the regions as its set of vertices and each edge corresponds to adjacent regions. Since then the game chromatic number has
received special attention and several approaches have been developed to find this number.

During the journey of attacking this problem a very useful tool came from an unexpected source. Chan and Schelp [5] proved that the class of planar graphs has a linear Ramsey number by bounding, for any vertex $v$, the number of smaller vertices, with respect to a fixed linear ordering $L$, that can be reached from $v$ by a path of length two whose internal vertex is greater than $v$. This was the birth of one of the generalized coloring numbers which was later called the strong 2 -coloring number $\operatorname{scol}_{2}(G)$. Kierstead and Trotter [22] realized that this was the missing tool. They proved that $\chi_{g}(G) \leq \chi(G)\left(1+\operatorname{scol}_{2}(G)\right)$, and as the class of planar graphs has bounded generalized coloring numbers, $\chi_{g}(G)$ is also bounded. Kierstead and Trotter [21] gave the rise of the strong 4-coloring numbers $\operatorname{scol}_{4}(G)$ and weak 4 -coloring numbers wcol $_{4}(G)$ by considering paths of length four with large internal vertices in their study of oriented game chromatic numbers. The general notions of strong $r$ coloring numbers $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G)$ and weak r-coloring numbers $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G)$ were first introduced by Kierstead and Yang [23]. Since then several applications have been found. Zhu [37] proved that these invariants are strongly related to low tree depth decompositions and they can be used to characterize both bounded expansion and nowhere dense classes of graphs. The generalized coloring numbers can also be used to give a linear-time constant-factor algorithm for approximation of the $k$-domination number in classes of graphs with bounded expansion (Dvoráak [8]).

In this dissertation, we focus on the weak 2-coloring number of planar graphs since this number is an upper bound for the star list chromatic number $c h_{s}(G)$. The best known upper bound for $\operatorname{ch}_{s}(G)$ was 28 where $G$ is any planar graph; in this dissertation, we prove that the weak 2-coloring number for any planar graph is at
most 23. We also focus on the chromatic numbers of exact distance-3 graphs. We prove that for any planar graph $G$, the chromatic number of the exact distance-3 graph $G^{[\text {b3 }] ~}$ is at most 95.

This dissertation is organized as follows. This chapter contains the needed background and a brief history of each notion. In Chapter 2, we prove that for every planar graph $G$, $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G) \leq 23$. In Chapter 3, we prove that for every planar graph $G, \chi\left(G^{[63]}\right) \leq 95$. We also give an example of a planar graph $G$ with $\chi\left(G^{[b 3]}\right) \geq 9$. In Chapter 4, we investigate a linear ordering $L$ defined by Van den Heuvel et al. [14]; we show that $\mathrm{wcol}_{2}[G, L] \leq 26$ and we show that, by giving an example, this result is tight. In Chapter 5, we give a new characterization of nowhere dense class of graphs.

### 1.1 Generalized Coloring Numbers

All graphs in this paper are finite and simple. For a graph $G=(V, E)$ and vertices $x, y \in V$, the distance between $x$ and $y$ in $G$ is the number of edges in the shortest path between $x$ and $y$ and it is denoted by $\operatorname{dist}_{G}(x, y)$. For $v \in G$, we denote the set of neighbors of $v$ by $N^{G}(v)$, or briefly by $N(v)$, and for $r \in \mathbb{N}$, we denote the set of vertices within distance at most $r$ from $v$ by $N_{r}[v]$. Note that $v \in N_{r}[v]$. We call $N_{r}[v]$ the closed $r$-neighborhood of $v$.

Let $\Pi(G)$ be the set of all linear orders of the vertices $V(G)$ of a graph $G$. For $L \in \Pi(G)$, we write $u<_{L} v$ if $u$ is smaller than $v$ with respect to $L$, and $u \leq_{L} v$ if $u<_{L} v$ or $u=v$. Let $X$ and $Y$ be two disjoint sets of vertices of $G$. We write $X<_{L} Y$ if every $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$ satisfy $x<_{L} y$. Let $r$ be a positive integer and $u, v \in V(G)$. We say that $u$ is strongly $r$-reachable from $v$ with respect to $L$ if $u \leq_{L} v$ and there is a path $P=u \ldots v$ in $G$ with $\|P\| \leq r$ and $v<_{L} w$ for all internal vertices $w$ of
$P$. If we allow paths of any length we say that $u$ is strongly reachable from $v$. We denote the set of all vertices $u$ such that $u$ is strongly $r$-reachable (strongly reachable) from $v$ with respect to $L$ by $\operatorname{Scol}_{r}[G, L, v]\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{\infty}[G, L, v]\right)$. Let $\operatorname{scol}_{r}[G, L, v]$ be the cardinality of $\operatorname{Scol}_{r}[G, L, v]$. Let $\operatorname{scol}_{r}[G, L]:=\max _{v \in V(G)} \operatorname{scol}_{r}[G, L, v]$. The strong $r$-coloring number $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G)$ of $G$ is defined by

$$
\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G):=\min _{L \in \Pi(G)} \operatorname{scol}_{r}[G, L] .
$$

We write $\operatorname{scol}_{r}[L, u]$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{r}[L, u]$ instead of $\operatorname{scol}_{r}[G, L, u]$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{r}[G, L, u]$ respectively if $G$ is known from the context.

We say that $u$ is weakly r-reachable from $v$ with respect to $L$ if there is a path $P=u \ldots v$ in $G$ with $\|P\| \leq r$ and $u \leq_{L} w$ for all vertices $w$ of $P$. If we allow paths of any length we say that $u$ is weakly reachable from $v$. We denote the set of all vertices $u$ such that $u$ is weakly $r$-reachable (weakly reachable) from $v$ with respect to $L$ by $\mathrm{Wcol}_{r}[G, L, v]\left(\mathrm{Wcol}_{\infty}[G, L, v]\right)$. Let $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}[G, L, v]$ be the cardinality of $\mathrm{Wcol}_{r}[G, L, v]$. Let $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}[G, L]:=\max _{v \in V(G)} \operatorname{wcol}_{r}[G, L, v]$. The weak r-coloring number $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G)$ of $G$ is defined by

$$
\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G):=\min _{L \in \Pi(G)} \operatorname{wcol}_{r}[G, L]
$$

Note that when $r=1$, then $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G)=\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G)=\operatorname{col}(G)$. We write $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}[L, u]$ and $\mathrm{Wcol}_{r}[L, u]$ instead of $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}[G, L, u]$ and $\mathrm{Wcol}_{r}[G, L, u]$ respectively if $G$ is known from the context.

As noticed in [23], the generalized coloring numbers are related; for every graph $G$ we have the following

$$
\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \leq \operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq\left(\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G)\right)^{r}
$$

Thus if the weak $r$-coloring number is bounded for a particular class of graphs, then the strong $r$-coloring number is also bounded and vice versa.

Let $L$ be a linear ordering of the vertices of a graph $G$. The fill-in of $G$ with respect to $L$ is the graph $G_{L}$ obtained inductively by adding for every vertex $v \in G$ (starting with the greatest vertex in the ordering $L$ ) an edge $u w$ for all $u, w \in N(v), u \neq w$ satisfying that $u<_{L} v$ and $w<_{L} v$. The elimination-width of the ordering $L$ is $\omega\left(G_{L}\right)-1$ where $\omega\left(G_{L}\right)$ is the size of the largest clique in $G_{L}$.

Observe that $\omega\left(G_{L}\right)$ equals the maximum over all vertices $v \in G$ of the number of vertices $u$ such that $u \leq_{L} v$ and $u$ can be reached from $v$ in $G$ by a path whose internal vertices are greater than $v$ with respect to $L$. So $\omega\left(G_{L}\right)=\max _{v \in V(G)} \operatorname{scol}_{\infty}[G, L, v]$; thus $\min _{L \in \Pi(G)} \omega\left(G_{L}\right)=\operatorname{scol}_{\infty}(G)$.

The generalized coloring numbers are gradations between the coloring number $\operatorname{col}(G)$ and the tree-width $\operatorname{tw}(G)$ and the tree-depth $\operatorname{td}(G)$.

Proposition 1.1.1. Let $G$ be a graph. Then

1. $\operatorname{col}(G) \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}(G) \leq \ldots \leq \operatorname{scol}_{\infty}(G)=\operatorname{tw}(G)+1$, and
2. $\operatorname{col}(G) \leq \operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G) \leq \ldots \leq \operatorname{wcol}_{\infty}(G)=\operatorname{td}(G)$.

The equality $\operatorname{scol}_{\infty}(G)=\operatorname{tw}(G)+1$ is proved in [11] and the equality $\operatorname{wcol}_{\infty}(G)=$ $\operatorname{td}(G)$ is proved in (Lemma 6.5, [31]).

There are several ways to define the tree-width $\operatorname{tw}(G)$ of $G$, we take this equality as its definition, i.e., $\operatorname{tw}(G)=\operatorname{scol}_{\infty}(G)-1$.

Determining the weak $r$-coloring numbers is $N P$-complete when $r \geq 3$ [11], while the problem remains open for $r=2$ and for the strong $r$-coloring numbers when $r \geq 2$.

It is natural to ask about the values of the generalized coloring numbers for a particular class of graphs. Grohe et al. [11] proved that for every graph $G$, the weak $r$-coloring number is bounded above by $\binom{r+\operatorname{tw}(G)}{\operatorname{tw}(G)}$. In the same paper, they gave for every positive integers $r$ and $k$, a graph $G$ such that $\operatorname{tw}(G)=k$ and $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \geq k+1$.

Theorem 1.1.2. Let $r$ be a positive integer.

1. If $G$ is a graph with $\operatorname{tw}(G) \leq k$ then $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq\binom{ r+k}{k}$.
2. For every positive integer $k$, there exists a graph $G$ with $\operatorname{tw}(G)=k$ and $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \geq k+1$.

Van den Heuvel et al. [14] gave a creative proof that dramatically improved the bounds of the generalized coloring numbers for the class of graphs that exclude $K_{t}$ as a minor.

Theorem 1.1.3. Let $G$ be a graph and $r$ be a positive integer. If $G$ excludes $K_{t}$ as a minor then

1. $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \leq\binom{ t-1}{2} \cdot(2 r+1)$, and
2. $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq\binom{ r+t-2}{t-2} \cdot(t-3)(2 r+1)$.

Those results were huge improvements from the exponential bounds of Grohe et al. [11] to linear bounds in $r$ for the strong $r$-coloring numbers and to polynomial bounds for the weak $r$-coloring numbers.

For graphs with bounded genus $g$, Van den Heuvel et al. [14] proved the following. Theorem 1.1.4. Let $G$ be a graph with genus $g$. Then

1. $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \leq(4 g+5) r+2 g+1$, and
2. $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq\left(2 g+\binom{r+2}{2}\right) \cdot(2 r+1)$.

It is well known that every planar graph excludes $K_{5}$ as a minor, so Theorem 1.1.3 bounds the generalized coloring numbers for planar graphs too. However, Theorem 1.1.4 gives better bounds for planar graphs $(g=0)$.

Theorem 1.1.5. (Van den Heuvel et al. [14]) Let $G$ be a planar graph and $r$ be a positive integer. Then

1. $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \leq 5 r+1$, and
2. $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq\binom{ r+2}{2}(2 r+1)$.

For every $r \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists a planar graph $G$ such that $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \geq \frac{r}{2}[14]$, so the above upper bound for $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G)$ gives a constant-factor approximation. If $r=1$, the bound on $\operatorname{col}(G)=\operatorname{wcol}_{1}(G)=\operatorname{scol}_{1}(G)$ is tight where $G$ is a planar graph. If $G$ excludes $K_{t}$ as a minor for $t=2,3$, Van den Heuvel et al. [14] showed the following.

## Theorem 1.1.6.

1. If $G$ is a graph that excludes $K_{2}$ as a minor, $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G)=\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G)=1$.
2. If $G$ is a graph that excludes $K_{3}$ as a minor, $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \leq 2$ and $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq r+1$.

In Chapter 4, we will study the linear ordering $L$ that Van den Heuvel et al. [14] constructed to witness $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \leq 5 r+1$.

The generalized coloring numbers when $r=2$ have attracted special attention since they play an important role on bounding other types of graph chromatic numbers, namely, game coloring number $\operatorname{gcol}(G)$, star chromatic number $\chi_{s}(G)$ and degenerate coloring number $\operatorname{ch}_{d}(G)$. We state the best known bounds for $\operatorname{scol}_{2}(G)$ and $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G)$ where $G$ is any planar graph, then we provide their relations with the other types of graph colorings.

Researchers have succeeded in their mission of finding the strong 2-coloring number $\operatorname{scol}_{2}(G)$ for planar graphs. Chan and Schelp [5] proved that the strong 2-coloring number for planar graphs is bounded above by 761. Kierstead and Trotter [22] improved the bound to 10 , then to 9 (Kierstead et al. [24]). On the other hand, several planar graphs with strong 2-coloring number equal to 8 have been found [22,

24]. Eventually, Dvořák et al. [9] proved that the strong 2-coloring number of planar graphs is at most 8 .

## Theorem 1.1.7.

1. For every planar graph $G, \operatorname{scol}_{2}(G) \leq 8$.
2. There exists a planar graph $G$ such that $\operatorname{scol}_{2}(G)=8$.

Unlike the strong 2-coloring number, researchers are still on the hunt for the weak 2-coloring number. Theorem 1.1.5 gives 30 as a bound for $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G)$ for any planar graph $G$. Kierstead and Yang [25] improved this bound to 28 . On the other hand, Albertson et al. [2] constructed a planar graph $G$ with star chromatic number at least 10 , as the star chromatic number is a lower bound for the weak 2-coloring number, $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G) \geq 10$.

In this dissertation, we prove that the weak 2-coloring number of any planar graph is at most 23 .

### 1.1.1 Game Coloring Numbers

Let $G$ be a graph. Assume that two players, Alice and Bob, with Alice playing first, play a game by taking turns on choosing an unchosen vertex from $V(G)$. The game ends when all $V(G)$ are chosen. For a vertex $v$ of $G$, define $b(v)$ to be the number of neighbors of $v$ chosen before $v$ during the game. The score of the game is $s=1+\max _{v \in V(G)} b(v)$.

Alice goal is to minimize $s$, while Bob goal is to maximize $s$. The game coloring number $\operatorname{gcol}(G)$ is the smallest $s$ such that Alice has a strategy to make the score at most $s$ no matter how Bob plays.

Bartnicki et al. [3] showed the following.

Theorem 1.1.8. Every graph $G$ satisfies that $\operatorname{gcol}(G) \leq 3 \operatorname{scol}_{2}(G)-1$.

Since $\operatorname{scol}_{2}(G) \leq 8$ for every planar graph $G$, we immediately get $\operatorname{gcol}(G) \leq 23$. However, this bound is not the best bound; Kierstead [19] proved that 18 colors are always sufficient when $G$ is a planar graph. Later, Zhu [38] improved the bound to 17 . On the other hand, Wu and Zhu [36] constructed a planar graph $G$ and a strategy for Bob to make the score at least 11 no matter how Alice plays.

### 1.1.2 Star chromatic Numbers

A star coloring of a graph $G$ is a proper coloring of $G$ such that any subgraph of $G$ that is induced by two colors has no $P_{4}$, i.e. every path of length three in $G$ is colored with at least three colors. The least number $r$ such that $G$ has a star coloring using $r$ colors is called the star chromatic number of $G$, and it is denoted by $\chi_{s}(G)$. If we assign for every $v \in G$ a list of colors $L(v)$ and we ask to color each vertex using a color from its list such that we get a star coloring, the coloring is called star list coloring. The smallest integer $k$ such that for any set of lists $\{L(v): v \in G\}$ satisfying $|L(v)|=k$ there exists a star list coloring of $G$ is called the star list chromatic number of $G$, and it is denoted by $c h_{s}(G)$. Clearly, $\chi_{s}(G) \leq c h_{s}(G)$ for every graph $G$.

The problem of finding the star chromatic numbers was first suggested in 1973 by Grünbaum [13], and has been investigated recently by other authors.

For planar graphs, Albertson et al. [2] proved the following.

Theorem 1.1.9. If $G$ is a planar graph then $\chi_{s}(G) \leq 20$.

In the same paper, Albertson et al. constructed a planar graph $G$ with $\chi_{s}(G) \geq 10$. Unfortunately, the proof of Theorem 1.1.9 did not improve the star list chromatic number $c h_{s}(G)$. The following theorem is a well known relation between the star list chromatic number and the weak 2-coloring number.

Theorem 1.1.10. For every graph $G, c h_{s}(G) \leq \operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G)$.

As $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G) \leq 23$ for planar graphs, this number is the new upper bound for $c h_{s}(G)$ too.

For planar bipartite graph, a better bound is found.

Theorem 1.1.11. (Kirestead et al. [20]) If $G$ is planar bipartite graph then $c h_{s}(G) \leq$ 14.

In the same paper, Kierstead et al. constructed a planar bipartite graph $G$ such that $\chi_{s}(G) \geq 8$.

### 1.1.3 Degenerate Coloring Numbers

Assume that a graph $G$ is vertex colored. Let $S$ be a set of color classes of $G$. We denote the subgraph of $G$ that is induced by the set of all vertices $v$ such that $v$ is in a color class in $S$ by $G[S]$. A proper coloring of a graph $G$ is a degenerate coloring if for every set $S$ of color classes, every subgraph $H$ of $G[S]$ has a vertex $w$ such that $d_{H}(w)<|S|$. In other words, a proper coloring of a graph $G$ is a degenerate coloring if for every subgraph $H$ of $G$, there is a vertex $w$ in $H$ such that the degree of $w$ in $H$ is less than the number of colors appearing in $H$. The least number $r$ such that $G$ has a degenerate coloring using $r$ colors is called the degenerate number of $G$, and it is denoted by $\chi_{d}(G)$. The degenerate coloring was first introduced by Borodin [4]. The
degenerate coloring is a strengthening of the acyclic coloring number $\chi_{\alpha}(G)$ which is the least number of colors needed to properly color the graph $G$ such that the union of any two color classes induces a forest.

There is another version of coloring called the list degenerate coloring. In this coloring, for each vertex $v \in G$, a list $L(v)$ of colors is assigned, and we are asked to color each vertex $v$ of $G$ from its list $L(v)$ such that the coloring is degenerate. The least $k$ such that for any set of color lists $\{L(v): v \in G\}$ with $|L(v)|=k$ the graph $G$ has a list degenerate coloring is called the list degenerate number, and it is denoted by $c h_{d}(G)$. Clearly, for every graph $G$, we have $\chi_{d}(G) \leq c h_{d}(G)$.

The strong 2-coloring number is related to the list degenerate coloring number as the following theorem shows.

Theorem 1.1.12. (Kierstead et al. [24]) For every graph $G$, $\operatorname{ch}_{d}(G) \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}(G)$.

As $\operatorname{scol}_{2}(G) \leq 8$ for every planar graph $G, c h_{d}(G) \leq 8$ too. On the other hand, there are infinity many planar graphs where each vertex is either of degree 5 or 6 . Clearly, those graphs cannot have degenerate coloring with less than 6 colors.

### 1.2 Path Decomposition for Planar Graphs

Let $H_{1}$ and $H_{2}$ be vertex-disjoint subgraphs of $G$. We say that $H_{1}$ is adjacent to $H_{2}$ if there is an edge $u v \in E(G)$ such that $v \in H_{1}$ and $u \in H_{2}$.

Definition 1.2.1. A sequence $\mathcal{H}=\left(H_{1}, \ldots, H_{s}\right)$ of none-empty subgraphs of a graph $G$ is a decomposition of $G$ if the sets $V\left(H_{1}\right), \ldots, V\left(H_{s}\right)$ partition $V(G)$. The decomposition is connected if each $H_{i}$ is connected.

Assume that a decomposition $\mathcal{H}=\left(H_{1}, \ldots, H_{s}\right)$ of a graph $G$ is given. We denote the subgraph of $G$ induced by $\bigcup_{i \leq j \leq s} V\left(H_{j}\right)$ by $G\left[H_{\geq i}\right]$.
Definition 1.2.2. Let $\mathcal{H}=\left(H_{1}, \ldots, H_{s}\right)$ be a decomposition of a graph $G$. Let $C$ be a component of $G\left[H_{\geq i}\right]$ where $1<i \leq s$. The separating number of $C$ is the number $t$ of graphs $H^{\prime} \in\left\{H_{1}, \ldots, H_{i-1}\right\}$ such that $H^{\prime}$ is adjacent to $C$. The width of $\mathcal{H}$ is the maximum separating number of a component $C$ of $G\left[H_{\geq i}\right]$, maximized over all $i, 1<i \leq s$.

Lemma 1.2.3. (Van den Heuvel et al. [14]) Let $\mathcal{H}=\left(H_{1}, \ldots, H_{s}\right)$ be a connected decomposition of a graph $G$ of width at most $k$. By contracting each connected subgraph $H_{i}$ to a single vertex $h_{i}$, we obtain a graph $H=G / \mathcal{H}$ with $s$ vertices and tree-width at most $k$. More precisely, the elimination-width of the ordering $L=h_{1}, \ldots, h_{s}$ is at most $k$.

There is a relation between the elimination-width and weak reachability as next theorem states.

Theorem 1.2.4. (Grohe et al. [11]) Let $G$ be a graph and let $L$ be a linear order of $V(G)$ with elimination-width at most $k$. For all $r \in \mathbb{N}$ and all $v \in V(G)$,

$$
\operatorname{wcol}_{r}[G, L, v] \leq\binom{ r+k}{k}
$$

From Theorem 1.2.4 and Lemma 1.2.3 we have the following.

Lemma 1.2.5. Let $\mathcal{H}=\left(H_{1}, \ldots, H_{s}\right)$ be a connected decomposition of a graph $G$ of width at most $k$. Let $H$ be the graph obtained from $G$ by contracting each $H_{i} \in \mathcal{H}$ to a single vertex $h_{i}$ where $1 \leq i \leq s$. For all $r \in \mathbb{N}$ and all $h_{i} \in V(H)$,

$$
\operatorname{wcol}_{r}\left[H, L, h_{i}\right] \leq\binom{ r+k}{k}
$$

where $L$ is the ordering of $V(H)$ that arises naturally from $\mathcal{H}$, i.e., $L=h_{1}, \ldots, h_{s}$.

A path in a graph $G$ is isometric if it is the shortest path in $G$ between its endpoints. Observe that if a path is isometric then all its subpaths are also isometric.

Lemma 1.2.6. Let $P=x_{1} \ldots x_{n}$ be an isometric path in $G$, and let $v \in G$. Then $\left|N_{r}[v] \cap P\right| \leq 2 r+1$.

Proof. Suppose $N_{r}[v] \cap P \neq \emptyset$, and let $x, y \in N_{r}[v] \cap P$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P}(x, y)$ is maximum. Since $x, y \in N_{r}[v], \operatorname{dist}_{G}(x, y) \leq 2 r$. As $P$ is isometric, $\operatorname{dist}_{P}(x, y)=$ $\operatorname{dist}_{G}(x, y)$. Thus $\left|N_{r}[v] \cap P\right| \leq 2 r+1$.

A decomposition $\mathcal{H}=\left(H_{1}, \ldots, H_{s}\right)$ of a graph $G$ is called an isometric-path decomposition if for every $i, 1 \leq i \leq s, H_{i}$ is an isometric path in $G\left[H_{\geq i}\right]$.

Van den Heuvel et al. [14] showed that every maximal planar graph $G$ has an isometric-path decomposition $\mathscr{P}=\left(P_{1}, \ldots, P_{s}\right)$ of width at most 2 . This decomposition is a very useful tool and it is the base of our work. For completeness, we include their proof.

Lemma 1.2.7. (Van den Heuvel et al. [14]) Every maximal planar graph $G$ has an isometric-path decomposition of width at most 2 .

Proof. Fix a plane drawing $\widetilde{G}$ of $G$. For simplicity, we write $G$ for $\widetilde{G}$. The lemma is trivial if $|G|=3$, so assume that $|G| \geq 4$. We inductively construct an isometric-path decomposition $P_{1}, \ldots, P_{k}, k \geq 2$ such that
$(*)$ for any component $C$ of $G\left[P_{\geq k+1}\right]$, the boundary of the region of $R^{2} \backslash G\left[P_{1} \cup\right.$ $\ldots \cup P_{k}$ ] containing $C$ is a cycle in $G$ that has its vertices in exactly two paths from $P_{1}, \ldots, P_{k}$.

Let $P_{1}$ be any edge of the outer face and let $P_{2}$ be the vertex of the outer face that is not contained in $P_{1}$. Then $G\left[P_{\geq 3}\right]$ has only one component and the boundary of the


Figure 1.1. Paths Decomposition of Width at Most 2
region of $R^{2} \backslash G\left[P_{1} \cup P_{2}\right]$ containing this component is the cycle forming the outer face.

Now assume that $P_{1}, \ldots, P_{k-1}$ are constructed as described above. Let $C_{k}$ be a component of $G\left[P_{\geq k}\right]$. Let $D_{k}$ be the cycle forming the boundary of the region of $R^{2} \backslash G\left[P_{1} \cup \ldots \cup P_{k-1}\right]$ in which $C_{k}$ lies. Let $P_{a}$ and $P_{b}$ where $1 \leq a<b \leq k-1$ be the paths such that $V\left(D_{k}\right) \subseteq V\left(P_{a} \cup P_{b}\right)$. Since any cycle contains at least three vertices, one of the paths, say $P_{a}$, has more than one vertex.

Since $P_{a}$ is an isometric, any edge $v u \in D_{k}$ where $u, v \in V\left(P_{a}\right)$ is also an edge in $P_{a}$. The same is true for $P_{b}$. Since $P_{a}$ and $P_{b}$ are vertex-disjoint, $D_{k}$ has exactly two edges $e_{k}$ and $e_{k}^{\prime}$ such that $e_{k}, e_{k}^{\prime} \notin P_{a} \cup P_{b}$. Say $e_{k}=v_{k} z_{k}, e_{k}^{\prime}=v_{k}^{\prime} z_{k}^{\prime}, v_{k}, v_{k}^{\prime} \in P_{a}, z_{k}, z_{k}^{\prime} \in P_{b}$. It is possible that $v_{k}=v_{k}^{\prime}$ or $z_{k}=z_{k}^{\prime}$ but not both as $G$ does not have multiple edges. Note that there could be lots of edges between $P_{a}$ and $P_{b}$ but only two of them are in $D_{k}$. Since every face in $G$ is triangulated, each one of those two edges belongs to the boundary of a triangle face contained in the interior of $D_{k}$, see Figure 1.1 on page 14 . Let $f_{k}$ and $f_{k}^{\prime}$ be those triangle faces, say $e_{k} \in G\left[f_{k}\right]$ and $e_{k}^{\prime} \in G\left[f_{k}^{\prime}\right]$ where $G[f]$ denotes
the boundary of the face $f$. Let $w_{k} \in G\left[f_{k}\right]-\left\{v_{k}, z_{k}\right\}$ and $w_{k}^{\prime} \in G\left[f_{k}^{\prime}\right]-\left\{v_{k}^{\prime}, z_{k}^{\prime}\right\}$ (it is possible that $w_{k}=w_{k}^{\prime}$ ). From the definition of $D_{k}$, both $w_{k}$ and $w_{k}^{\prime}$ are in $C_{k}$. Choose $P_{k}$ to be the shortest path between $w_{k}$ and $w_{k}^{\prime}$ in $C_{k}$.

Let $C^{\prime}$ be a component of $G\left[P_{\geq k+1}\right]$ such that $C^{\prime} \subset C_{k}$. From the way $P_{k}$ is defined, $C^{\prime}$ is adjacent to at most two paths among $P_{a}, P_{b}$ and $P_{k}$, and no such component is adjacent to both $P_{a}$ and $P_{b}$. Now we just need to show that $C^{\prime}$ is adjacent to exactly two paths among $P_{a}, P_{b}$ and $P_{k}$. Let $D^{\prime \prime}$ be the cycle forming the boundary of the region of $R^{2} \backslash G\left[P_{1} \cup \ldots \cup P_{k}\right]$ containing $C^{\prime}$. Assume that $V\left(D^{\prime \prime}\right) \subseteq V\left(P_{i}\right)$ for some $i \in\{a, b, k\}$. Then there exists an edge $e=u v \in D^{\prime \prime}$ such that $u, v \in V\left(P_{i}\right)$ but $e \notin P_{i}$; this is in contradiction to the fact that $P_{i}$ is an isometric path.

Let $\mathscr{P}=\left(P_{1}, \ldots, P_{s}\right)$ be the resulting decomposition. Let $L$ be any ordering of $V(G)$ satisfying that $V\left(P_{i}\right)<_{L} V\left(P_{j}\right)$ if $i<j$ (i.e., if $x \in P_{i}$ and $y \in P_{j}$ where $i<j$ then $x<_{L} y$ ). Contract each $P_{i}$ to a single vertex $p_{i}$, and call the resulting graph $H$, i.e., $H=G / \mathscr{P}$. Let $v \in G$ and let $P_{i}$ be the path containing $v$. From Lemma 1.2.5, there are at most $\binom{r+2}{2}$ vertices in $H$ that are weakly $r$-reachable from $p_{i}$ with respect to the ordering $L^{\prime}=p_{1}, \ldots, p_{s}$. Those vertices correspond to the only paths in $\mathscr{P}$ that may contain vertices that are weakly $r$-reachable from $v$ in $G$. Since each one of those paths $P_{j}$ is isometric in $G\left[P_{\geq j}\right]$, Lemma 1.2.6 tells us that $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}[G, L, v] \leq\binom{ r+2}{2} \cdot(2 r+1)$.

Theorem 1.2.8. (Van den Heuvel et al. [14]) Let $G$ be a planar graph and $r \in \mathbb{N}$. Then $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq\binom{ r+2}{2} \cdot(2 r+1)$.

For $r=2$, we immediately get $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G) \leq 30$. Note that the restriction of $L$ on $V\left(P_{i}\right), i \in[s]$ was arbitrary. If we fix any endpoint of $P_{i}$ and order the vertices toward this end then we easily get $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq\binom{ r+2}{2} \cdot(2 r+1)-r$. This gives $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G) \leq 28$.

In Chapter 2, we will modify the technique used in the proof of Lemma 1.2.7 to prove that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G) \leq 23$ for every planar graph $G$.

### 1.3 Distance- $r$-coloring Numbers

Van den Heuvel et al. [15] defined another variant of the generalized coloring numbers called distance-r-coloring number $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G)$. Let $L \in \Pi(G)$. For every $v \in V(G)$, let $\operatorname{Dcol}_{r}[G, L, v]$ be the set of all vertices $u$ such that there is a path $P=x_{0} \ldots x_{s}$ in $G$ with $x_{0}=u, x_{s}=v$ satisfying:

- $\|P\|=s \leq r ;$
- $u$ is the minimum vertex in $P$ with respect to $L$;
- $v \leq_{L} x_{i}$ for $\left\lfloor\frac{r}{2}\right\rfloor+1 \leq i \leq s$.

We denote the cardinality of $\operatorname{Dcol}_{r}[G, L, v]$ by $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}[G, L, v]$. Let

$$
\operatorname{dcol}_{r}[G, L]:=\max _{v \in V(G)} \operatorname{dcol}_{r}[G, L, v] .
$$

The distance-r-coloring number $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G)$ is defined as follows.

$$
\operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G):=\min _{L \in \Pi(G)} \operatorname{dcol}_{r}[G, L] .
$$

We write $\operatorname{Dcol}_{r}[L, v]$ and $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}[L, v]$ instead of $\operatorname{Dcol}_{r}[G, L, v]$ and $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}[G, L, v]$ respectively if $G$ is known from the context.

It is not hard to see that $\operatorname{Scol}_{r}[L, v] \subseteq \operatorname{Dcol}_{r}[L, v] \subseteq \operatorname{Wcol}_{r}[L, v]$, so

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \leq \operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G) \leq \operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \tag{1.3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Also as $\mathrm{Wcol}_{\left\lfloor\frac{r}{2}\right\rfloor+1}[L, v] \subseteq \operatorname{Dcol}_{r}[L, v], \operatorname{wcol}_{\left\lfloor\frac{r}{2}\right\rfloor+1}(G) \leq \operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G)$.
Van den Heuvel et al. [15] gave explicit upper bounds of $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G)$ for some classes of graphs. They proved the following.

Theorem 1.3.1. Let $r \in \mathbb{N}$.

1. If $G$ is a planar graph then $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G) \leq\left(\left\lfloor\frac{r}{2}\right\rfloor+3\right) \cdot(2 r+1)-r$.
2. Let $t \in \mathbb{N}$ and $G$ a graph with tree-width at most $t$. Then $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G) \leq\left({ }_{t}^{t+\left\lfloor\frac{r}{2}\right\rfloor+1}\right)$.

The motivation behind defining the distance-r-coloring number $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G)$ is to bound the chromatic number of the exact distance graphs as we see in the following section.

### 1.4 Exact Distance Graphs

Let $p \in \mathbb{N}$ and $G=(V, E)$ is a graph. The $p$-th power graph $G^{p}$ of $G$ is a graph with $V$ as its set of vertices, and $x y \in E\left(G^{p}\right)$ if and only if $\operatorname{dist}_{G}(x, y) \leq p$. Problems related to the chromatic number of $G^{p}$ were first considered by Kramer and Kramer [27, 26]. If $G$ is a star then $G^{2}$ is a clique, so $\chi\left(G^{2}\right)=|V(G)|$. Thus there are not many graphs $G$ for which $\chi\left(G^{p}\right)$ is bounded by a constant. It is not hard to show that for a graph $G$ with maximum degree $\Delta(G) \geq 3$,

$$
\chi\left(G^{p}\right) \leq 1+\Delta\left(G^{p}\right) \leq 1+\Delta(G) \cdot \sum_{i=0}^{p-1}(\Delta(G)-1)^{i} \in \mathcal{O}\left(\Delta(G)^{p}\right)
$$

There are some classes of graphs for which the upper bound is better. Recall that a graph $G$ is $k$-degenerate if for every subgraph $H \subseteq G, H$ contains a vertex of degree at most $k$.

Theorem 1.4.1. (Agnarsson and Halldórsson [1]) Let $k, p \in \mathbb{N}$. Let $G$ be a $k$ degenerate graph. Then there exists a constant $c=c(k, p)$ such that $\chi\left(G^{p}\right) \leq c$. $\Delta(G)^{\lfloor p / 2\rfloor}$.

The exponent $\left\lfloor\frac{p}{2}\right\rfloor$ is best possible. In particular, for planar graphs $G, \chi\left(G^{2}\right)$ has a linear bound in $\Delta(G)$. In 1977, Wegner [35] conjectured that if $G$ is a planar graph and
$\Delta(G) \geq 8$ then $\chi\left(G^{2}\right) \leq\left\lfloor\frac{3}{2} \Delta(G)\right\rfloor+1$, and he gave examples showing that this bound would be best possible. Since then this conjecture has attracted special attention.

Nešetřil and Ossona de Mendez (Section 11.9, [31]) introduced the notions of exact power and exact distance graphs. Let $p \in \mathbb{N}$ and $G=(V, E)$ a graph. The exact p-power graph $G^{\natural p}$ of $G$ is a graph with $V$ as its set of vertices, and $x y \in E\left(G^{\natural p}\right)$ if and only if there is a path of length $p$ between $x$ and $y$ in $G$ (the path need not be a shortest path). While the exact distance-p graph $G^{[\boxed{p p]}}$ is a graph with $V$ as its set of vertices, and $x y \in E\left(G^{[\lfloor p]}\right)$ if and only if $\operatorname{dist}_{G}(x, y)=p$. Clearly, $\chi\left(G^{[\lfloor p]}\right) \leq \chi\left(G^{\natural p}\right) \leq \chi\left(G^{p}\right)$ as $E\left(G^{[\natural p]}\right) \subseteq E\left(G^{\natural p}\right) \subseteq E\left(G^{p}\right)$.

Every planar graph is 5 -degenerate, so Theorem 1.4 .1 gives that $\chi\left(G^{\natural p}\right) \in$ $\mathcal{O}\left(\Delta(G)^{\lfloor p / 2\rfloor}\right)$ for every planar graph $G$. This bound is optimal even for outerplanar graphs [15]. The situation is different for exact distance- $p$ graphs. For every planar graph $G$ and an odd integer $p, \chi\left(G^{[h p]}\right) \in O(1)$, and when $p$ is even we have $\chi\left(G^{[h p]}\right) \in O(\Delta(G))$. Indeed, those results are special cases from more general results.

Let $\mathcal{K}$ be a class of graphs with bounded expansion (the definition will be given next section). Nešetřil and Ossona de Mendez (Theorem 11.8, [31]) proved that for $G \in \mathcal{K}$ and an odd integer $p$ we have $\chi\left(G^{[\natural p]}\right) \in \mathcal{O}(1)$. Van den Heuvel et al. [15] proved that for $G \in \mathcal{K}$ and an even integer $p$ we have $\chi\left(G^{[\natural p]}\right) \in \mathcal{O}(\Delta(G))$. Since every class of planar graphs is a class with bounded expansion, their results hold for planar graphs too.

Theorem 1.4.2. Let $\mathcal{K}$ be a class of graphs with bounded expansion.

1. Let $p$ be an odd positive integer. Then there exists a constant $C=C(\mathcal{K}, p)$ such that for every $G \in \mathcal{K}$ we have $\chi\left(G^{[h p]}\right) \leq C$.
2. Let $p$ be an even positive integer. Then there exists a constant $C^{\prime}=C^{\prime}(\mathcal{K}, p)$ such that for every $G \in \mathcal{K}$ we have $\chi\left(G^{[\llcorner p]}\right) \leq C^{\prime} . \Delta(G)$.

We have seen that in general we cannot bound $\chi\left(G^{\natural p}\right)$ without involving $\Delta(G)$ even if $p$ is an odd integer and $G$ is a planar graph. However, if we require that $G$ has large enough odd girth then we can bound $\chi\left(G^{\natural p}\right)$ without involving $\Delta(G)$ where $p$ is odd.

Theorem 1.4.3. (Nešetřil and Ossona de Mendez (Theorem 11.7, [31])) Let $\mathcal{K}$ be a class of graphs with bounded expansion, and $p$ an odd integer. If $G \in \mathcal{K}$ with odd girth at least $p+1$ then there exists a constant $C=C(\mathcal{K}, p)$ such that $\chi\left(G^{\natural p}\right) \leq C$.

A class of graphs with bounded expansion can be characterized in many different ways, one of them is in terms of generalized coloring numbers.

Theorem 1.4.4. (Zhu [37]) A class of graphs $\mathcal{K}$ has bounded expansion if and only if for every $r \in \mathbb{N}$ there exists a constant $c_{r}$ such that $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq c_{r}$ for all $G \in \mathcal{K}$.

Van den Heuvel et al. [15] proved Theorem 1.4.2(2) and gave two different proofs with better bounds for Theorem 1.4.2(1) using this characterization. They proved the following.

Theorem 1.4.5. Let $G$ be a graph.

1. If $p$ is an odd positive integer then $\chi\left(G^{[b p]}\right) \leq \operatorname{dcol}_{2 p-1}(G)$.
2. If $p$ is an even positive integer then $\chi\left(G^{[\boxed{p p]})} \leq \operatorname{dcol}_{2 p}(G) \cdot \Delta(G)\right.$.

This theorem together with (1.3.1) and Theorem 1.4.4 give Theorem 1.4.2. They also proved the following.

Theorem 1.4.6. Let $G$ be a graph and $p$ an odd integer. Set $q=\operatorname{wcol}_{p}(G)$.

1. We have $\chi\left(G^{\lfloor h p]}\right) \leq\left(\left\lfloor\frac{p}{2}\right\rfloor+2\right)^{q}$.
2. If $G$ has odd girth at least $p+1$ then $\chi\left(G^{\natural p}\right) \leq\left(\left\lfloor\frac{p}{2}\right\rfloor+2\right)^{q}$.

Clearly, Theorem 1.4.6(1) leads to Theorem 1.4.2(1).
For the class of planar graphs, the class of bounded tree-width graphs and other classes, Van den Heuvel et al. [15] give explicit upper bounds of $\chi\left(G^{[\hbar p]}\right)$ by finding upper bounds of $\operatorname{dcol}_{p}(G)$.

Theorem 1.4.7. Let $p \in \mathbb{N}$.

1. If $G$ is a planar graph then $\operatorname{dcol}_{p}(G) \leq\left(\left\lfloor\frac{p}{2}\right\rfloor+3\right) \cdot(2 p+1)-p$.
2. If $G$ is a graph with genus $g$ then $\operatorname{dcol}_{p}(G) \leq\left(2 g+\left(\left\lfloor\frac{p}{2}\right\rfloor+3\right)\right) \cdot(2 p+1)-p$.
3. Let $t \in \mathbb{N}$ and $G$ is a graph with tree-width at most $t$. Then $\operatorname{dcol}_{p}(G) \leq\binom{ t+\left\lfloor\frac{p}{2}\right\rfloor+1}{t}$.
4. If $G$ is a graph that excludes $K_{t}$ as a minor then $\operatorname{dcol}_{p}(G) \leq\binom{ t+\left\lfloor\frac{p}{2}\right\rfloor-1}{t-2} \cdot(t-$ $3)(2 p+1)$.

Since every outerplanar graph $G$ has tree-width at most 2, Theorem 1.4.7(3) and Theorem 1.4.5 together give $\chi\left(G^{[43]}\right) \leq 10$.

From the proof of Theorem 11.8 [31], it follows that for any planar graph $G$, $\chi\left(G^{[\text {bu] }]}\right) \leq 5.2^{20,971,522}$. On the other hand, Exercise 11.4 [31] gives an example of planar graph $G$ with $\chi\left(G^{[\boxed{[3]})=6 \text {. From Theorem 1.4.5 together with Theorem }}\right.$ 1.4.7(1), Van den Heuvel et al. [14] improved the upper bound to 105. In the same paper, they gave an example for planar graph $G$ with $\chi\left(G^{[b 3]}\right)=7$.

In this dissertation, we tighten the range of $\chi\left(G^{[63]}\right)$; we prove that $\chi\left(G^{[63]}\right) \leq 95$ for every planar graph $G$ and we give an example for planar graph $G$ such that $\chi\left(G^{[\mathrm{L} 3]}\right) \geq 9$.

### 1.5 Nowhere Dense Classes and Classes with Bounded Expansion

The class of nowhere dense graphs was first introduced by Nešetřil and Ossona de Mendez [30, 31]. It generalizes and includes other types of sparse graph classes such as classes that exclude minors and classes with bounded expansion. Nowhere dense graph classes have useful algorithmic properties [6, 31, 12]; some algorithmic hard problems can be solved efficiently when they are restricted to nowhere dense classes. Nowhere dense classes are a limit for the efficient solvability of a wide class of problems [10, 28]. Grohe et al. [12] proved that for every graph in a fixed nowhere dense class, every first-order property can be decided in almost linear time. Nowhere dense classes can be characterized in several seemingly different ways. They can be characterized in terms of shallow minor densities [30], consequently in terms of generalized coloring numbers (by a result from [37]), sparse neighborhood covers [12, 11], just to name a few.

Definition 1.5.1. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a class of graphs. We say that $\mathcal{C}$ is nowhere dense if for every $r \geq 1$ there exists $t \geq 1$ such that no graph in the class contains a topological minor of the complete graph $K_{t}$ where every edge is subdivided at most $r$ times. A class of graphs $\mathcal{C}$ is somewhere dense if it is not nowhere dense.

Nowhere dense classes can also be defined in terms of ordinary minors. Denote the average degree of $G$ by $d(G)$. A class of graphs $\mathcal{C}$ is nowhere dense if for every positive integer $r$ and every $\epsilon>0$, there exists a positive integer $n_{0}$ such that if $H$ is a graph with $|V(H)| \geq n_{0}$ and $H$ is depth- $r$ minor of some $G \in \mathcal{C}$, then $d(H) \leq|V(H)|^{\epsilon}$.

Theorem 1.5.2. (by a result from [30]) A class of graphs $\mathcal{C}$ is nowhere dense if and only if for every $r \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon>0$ there exists an integer $n_{0}$ such that for every graph
$G \in \mathcal{C}$ with $|V(G)| \geq n_{0}$ we have

$$
\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq|V(G)|^{\epsilon}
$$

There are more restrictive sparse classes which are also characterized in terms of the generalized coloring numbers.

Definition 1.5.3. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a class of graphs. We say that $\mathcal{C}$ has bounded expansion if for every $r \geq 1$ there exists $t \geq 1$ such that no graph in the class contains a topological minor of a graph $H$ where every edge is subdivided at most $r$ times and $d(H) \geq t$.

Theorem 1.5.4. (Zhu [37]) A class of graphs $\mathcal{C}$ is a class with bounded expansion if and only if for every positive integer $r$ there exists a constant number $c$ such that $\operatorname{wcol}_{r}(G) \leq c$ for every $G \in \mathcal{C}$.

Next we consider other characterizations of nowhere dense classes; the generalized coloring numbers were used to prove the forward implication of Theorem 1.5.10 and Lemma 1.5.13.

### 1.5.1 Poset Dimension

Nowhere dense classes can also be characterized in terms of poset dimension. Joret et al. [16] showed that the property of being nowhere dense class can be captured by looking at the dimension of posets whose order diagrams are in the class when seen as graphs.

Let $P$ be a poset. The dimension $\operatorname{dim}(P)$ is the least number of total orders such that the intersection of those orders gives rise to $P$. The standard way of representing a poset is by drawing it's diagram: if $v{<_{P}} u$ we draw $v$ below $u$ and we draw a curve from $v$ up to $u$ if the relation $v{<_{P}}^{u}$ is not implied by transitivity. Any relation
$v<_{P} u$ not implied by transitivity is called cover relation. The height of a poset is the maximum number of vertices in a chain in the poset. The diagram corresponds in a natural way to undirected graph $G$, where $V(G)$ are the elements of the poset and $E(G)$ correspond to the pairs of elements in a cover relation. The graph $G$ is called the cover graph of $P$.

Recall that a monotone class means a class closed under taking subgraphs.

Theorem 1.5.5. (Joret et al. [16]) Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a monotone class of graphs. Then $\mathcal{C}$ is nowhere dense if and only if for every $h \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon>1$, $n$-element posets of height at most $h$ whose cover graphs are in $\mathcal{C}$ have dimension $\mathcal{O}\left(n^{\epsilon}\right)$.

It is conjectured that classes with bounded expansion can be characterized in terms of poset dimension, where the dimension is bounded by a function of the height. Conjecture 1.5.6. (Joret et al. [17]) A monotone class of graphs $\mathcal{C}$ has bounded expansion if and only if for every fixed $h \geq 1$, posets of height at most $h$ whose cover graphs are in $\mathcal{C}$ have bounded dimension.

The forward implication of the conjecture is shown in the same paper, but the backward direction is still open.

### 1.5.2 Sparse Neighborhood Covers

Another characterization of nowhere dense graphs is in terms of sparse neighborhood covers. Neighborhood covers with small size and radius play an important role in the design of many data structures for distributed systems [33, 32].

For a positive integer $r$, an $r$-neighborhood cover $\mathcal{X}$ of a graph $G$ is a set of connected subgraphs of $G$ called clusters such that for every vertex $v$ in $G$ there is a
cluster $X \in \mathcal{X}$ with $N_{r}(v) \subseteq X$. The radius of the cover $\mathcal{X}$ is $\max \{\operatorname{rad}(X): X \in \mathcal{X}\}$ and it is denoted by $\operatorname{rad}(\mathcal{X})$. The degree $d^{\mathcal{X}}(v)$ of $v$ in $\mathcal{X}$ is the number of clusters containing $v$. The degree of $\mathcal{X}$ is $\max \left\{d^{\mathcal{X}}(v): v \in G\right\}$.

Definition 1.5.7. A class $\mathcal{C}$ admits sparse neighborhood covers if for every positive integer $r$, there exists a positive integer $c$ such that for all $\epsilon>0$ there exists $n_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $G \in \mathcal{C}$ with $|G| \geq n_{0}$, there exists an $r$-neighborhood cover $\mathcal{X}$ with $\operatorname{rad}(\mathcal{X}) \leq c r$ at degree at most $|G|^{\epsilon}$.

The generalized coloring numbers are useful tools in finding neighborhood covers with small radius.

Theorem 1.5.8. (Grohe et al. [12]) Let $G$ be a graph. If $\operatorname{wcol}_{2 r}(G)=d$ then $G$ admits an r-neighborhood cover $\mathcal{X}$ of radius at most $2 r$ and degree at most $d$. Therefore, if $\mathcal{C}$ is nowhere dense class then $\mathcal{C}$ admits sparse neighborhood covers.

Theorem 1.5.9. (Grohe et al. [11]) Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a monotone class of graphs. If $\mathcal{C}$ admits sparse neighborhood covers then $\mathcal{C}$ is nowhere dense.

From Theorem 1.5.8 and Theorem 1.5.9, we have the following.

Theorem 1.5.10. A monotone class of graphs $\mathcal{C}$ is nowhere dense if and only if it admits sparse neighborhood covers.

### 1.5.3 The $k$-domination Numbers

A set $D \subseteq V(G)$ is a dominating set if for every $v \in V(G)$, either $v \in D$ or $N(v) \cap D \neq \phi$. The minimum size of a dominating set is called the domination number of $G$, and it is denoted by $\operatorname{dom}(G)$. Determining the domination number is a famous
problem in algorithmic graph theory and it is known to be NP-complete in general $(\operatorname{Karp}[18])$. Even approximating $\operatorname{dom}(G)$ within a factor better than $O(\log (|V(G)|)$ is NP-complete (Raz and Safra [34]). However, when restricted to some sparse classes, the problem becomes more manageable. For example, for every $G$ with degeneracy at most $c$, there exists a linear-time algorithm approximating $\operatorname{dom}(G)$ within a factor $O\left(c^{2}\right)$ (Lenzen and Wattenhofer [29]).

The $k$-domination number generalizes the notion of the domination number. The $k$-domination number of a graph $G$ is the minimum size of a set $D \subseteq V(G)$ such that for every $v \in G, \operatorname{dist}_{G}(v, u) \leq k$ for some $u \in D$. The $k$-domination number of a graph $G$ is denoted by $\operatorname{dom}_{k}(G)$.

The generalized coloring numbers can be used to give a linear-time constant-factor algorithm approximating the $k$-domination number in classes of graphs with bounded expansion.

Definition 1.5.11. Let $G$ be a graph and $A \subseteq V(G)$. The subset $A$ is $d$-independent if for every two vertices $x, y \in A, \operatorname{dist}_{G}(x, y)>d$. The maximum size of a $d$-independent set in $G$ is denoted by $\alpha_{d}(G)$.

It is easy to see that for any graph $G, \alpha_{2 k}(G) \leq \operatorname{dom}_{k}(G)$. When we restrict the problem to the classes with bounded expansion, then $\operatorname{dom}_{k}(G)=\mathcal{O}\left(\alpha_{2 k}(G)\right)$.

Theorem 1.5.12. (Dvorak [8]) If $k \geq 1$ and $1 \leq m \leq 2 k+1$ are integers and $G$ is a graph satisfying that $\operatorname{wcol}_{m}(G) \leq c$, then $\operatorname{dom}_{k}(G) \leq c^{2} \alpha_{m}(G)$.

From Theorem 1.5.12 and Theorem 1.5.2 we have the following.

Lemma 1.5.13. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a nowhere dense class of graphs. Then for every $r \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon>0$ there exists an integer $n_{0}$ such that for every graph $G \in \mathcal{C}$ with $|V(G)| \geq n_{0}$ we
have

$$
\operatorname{dom}_{r}(G) \leq|V(G)|^{2 \epsilon} \alpha_{2 r}(G)
$$

In Chapter 5, we prove that the converse of Lemma 1.5.13 is also true for every monotone class of graphs $\mathcal{C}$.

## ON THE WEAK 2-COLORING NUMBER OF PLANAR GRAPHS

In this chapter, we prove the following.

Theorem 2.0.1. For every planar graph $G, \operatorname{wcol}_{2}(G) \leq 23$.

We first give an isometric-path decomposition $\mathscr{P}=\left(P_{1}, \ldots, P_{s}\right)$ for $G$. After that we use $\mathscr{P}$ to define a linear ordering $L$ of $V(G)$. Then we prove that $\mathrm{wcol}_{2}[G, L] \leq 23$. We also give an example of a planar graph $G$ such that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[G, L]=23$. This shows that the upper bound 23 is optimal in terms of our method.

### 2.1 Isometric-path Decomposition $\mathscr{P}$

We may assume without loss of generality that $G$ is a maximal planar graph since removing edges does not increase the weak coloring numbers. We refine the isometric-path decomposition that is defined by Van den Heuvel et al. [14]. We gave the construction of their decomposition in the proof of Lemma 1.2.7. Here we add an extra condition when we choose the shortest path $P_{k}$ between $w_{k}$ and $w_{k}^{\prime}$. If there are more than one isometric paths then break ties as follows.
$(* *)$ Choose $P_{k}$ so that the interior of the cycle $D^{\prime}:=v_{k} P_{a} v_{k}^{\prime} w_{k}^{\prime} P_{k} w_{k} v_{k}$ has as few vertices as possible.

Let $\mathscr{P}=\left(P_{1}, \ldots, P_{s}\right)$ be the resulting isometric-path decomposition. We give now some notations. For each $i \in[s]$, denote the endpoints of $P_{i}$ by $w_{i}$ and $w_{i}^{\prime}$. Let $i \in[s] \backslash\{1,2\}$, then $P_{i}$ is adjacent to exactly two paths $P_{a}, P_{b} \in\left\{P_{1}, \ldots, P_{i-1}\right\}, a<b$.

We call $P_{a}$ the strong parent and $P_{b}$ the weak parent of $P_{i}$. We say that $P_{j}, j \in[s]$ is a parent of $P_{i}$ if $P_{j}$ is either the strong or the weak parent of $P_{i}$. For each $i \in[s] \backslash\{1,2\}$, denote the component of $G\left[P_{\geq i}\right]$ containing $P_{i}$ by $C_{i}$, the cycle forming the boundary of the region of $R^{2} \backslash G\left[P_{1} \cup \ldots \cup P_{i-1}\right]$ in which $C_{i}$ lies by $D_{i}$, and the two edges $e \in D_{i}$ such that $e \notin P_{a} \cup P_{b}$ by $e_{i}$ and $e_{i}^{\prime}$. Denote the unique vertex in $V\left(P_{a}\right) \cap e_{i}$ by $v_{i}$, and the unique vertex in $V\left(P_{a}\right) \cap e_{i}^{\prime}$ by $v_{i}^{\prime}$. Denote the unique vertex in $V\left(P_{b}\right) \cap e_{i}$ by $z_{i}$, and the unique vertex in $V\left(P_{b}\right) \cap e_{i}^{\prime}$ by $z_{i}^{\prime}$. The edges $e_{i}, e_{i}^{\prime}$ each belong to the boundary of a triangle face contained in the interior of $D_{i}$. Let $f_{i}$ and $f_{i}^{\prime}$ be those triangle faces with $e_{i} \in G\left[f_{i}\right]$ and $e_{i}^{\prime} \in G\left[f_{i}^{\prime}\right]$. Denote the unique vertex in $G\left[f_{i}\right]-\left\{v_{i}, z_{i}\right\}$ by $w_{i}$, and the unique vertex in $G\left[f_{i}^{\prime}\right]-\left\{v_{i}^{\prime}, z_{i}^{\prime}\right\}$ by $w_{i}^{\prime}$. Denote the cycle $v_{i} P_{a} v_{i}^{\prime} w_{i}^{\prime} P_{i} w_{i} v_{i}$ by $D_{i, 1}$ and the cycle $w_{i} P_{i} w_{i}^{\prime} z_{i}^{\prime} P_{b} z_{i} w_{i}$ by $D_{i, 2}$. Denote the interior of $D_{i, 1}$ by $O_{i, 1}$, and the interior of $D_{i, 2}$ by $O_{i, 2}$.

The following four lemmas follow directly from the construction of $\mathscr{P}$.

Lemma 2.1.1. Let $P_{i} \in \mathscr{P}, i \geq 3$. If $v$ is a vertex in the interior of $D_{i}$, then $v \in P_{j} \in \mathscr{P}$ for some $j \geq i$.

Lemma 2.1.2. Let $v \in P_{i}, i \geq 3$. Let $P_{a}$ and $P_{b}$ be the strong and weak parents of $P_{i}$ respectively. If $P$ is a path between $v$ and a vertex $u \in V\left(P_{1} \cup \ldots \cup P_{i-1}\right)$ then $P$ intersects with $P_{a} \cup P_{b}$, more precisely, $P$ intersects with either $v_{i} P_{a} v_{i}^{\prime}$ or $z_{i} P_{b} z_{i}^{\prime}$.

Lemma 2.1.3. Let $P_{i} \in \mathscr{P}, i \geq 3$. Let $P_{a}$ be the strong parent, and $P_{b}$ the weak parent of $P_{i}$. Then $P_{a}$ is a parent of $P_{b}$, i.e., if $b \geq 3, P_{a}$ is either the strong parent or the weak parent of $P_{b}$.

Lemma 2.1.4. Let $P_{i}, P_{j} \in \mathscr{P}, i \geq 3$. If $P_{i}$ is a parent of $P_{j}$ then $C_{j} \subset C_{i}$.

We will use the next lemma often in the remainder of this chapter.

Lemma 2.1.5. Let $P_{i} \in \mathscr{P}, i \in[s] \backslash\{1,2\}$ and let $x, y \in P_{i}$. Assume that there exists a path $Q$ between $x$ and $y$ in $O_{i, 1} \cup P_{i}$ such that $Q$ contains at least one vertex in $O_{i, 1}$ (i.e., $Q$ is not a subpath of $P_{i}$ ). Then $\left\|x P_{i} y\right\| \leq\|Q\|-1$.

Proof. We may assume without loss of generality that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(x, w_{i}\right) \leq \operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(y, w_{i}\right)$. The path $P_{i}$ is isometric in $C_{i}$, so $x P_{i} y$ is also isometric in $C_{i}$. Both $x P_{i} y$ and $Q$ are paths between $x$ and $y$ in $C_{i}$. Thus $\left\|x P_{i} y\right\| \leq\|Q\|$. Assume that $\left\|x P_{i} y\right\|=\|Q\|$. Starting from the $x$-end of $Q$ find the last vertex $x^{\prime} \in Q$ such that $x^{\prime} \in w_{i} P_{i} x$. Starting from the $y$-end of $x^{\prime} Q y$ find the last vertex $y^{\prime} \in x^{\prime} Q y$ such that $y^{\prime} \in y P_{i} w_{i}^{\prime}$. The vertices $x^{\prime}$ and $y^{\prime}$ exist because $x$ and $y$ respectively are candidates. Assume that $x^{\prime}=x$ and $y^{\prime}=y$. As $Q \subseteq O_{i, 1} \cup P_{i}$ and $Q$ contains a vertex in $O_{i, 1}$, the number of vertices in the interior of the cycle $v_{i} P_{a} v_{i}^{\prime} w_{i}^{\prime} P_{i} y Q x P_{i} w_{i} v_{i}$ is less than the number of vertices in $O_{i, 1}$, a contradiction to $(* *)$. Thus $\left\|x P_{i} y\right\|<\|Q\|$ as desired. Assume now that either $x^{\prime} \neq x$ or $y^{\prime} \neq y$. Clearly, $\left\|x P_{i} y\right\|<\left\|x^{\prime} P_{i} y^{\prime}\right\|$. The path $x^{\prime} P_{i} y^{\prime}$ is isometric in $C_{i}$, and both $x^{\prime} P_{i} y^{\prime}$ and $x^{\prime} Q y^{\prime}$ are paths between $x^{\prime}$ and $y^{\prime}$ in $C_{i}$. Then $\left\|x^{\prime} P_{i} y^{\prime}\right\| \leq\left\|x^{\prime} Q y^{\prime}\right\|$. Since either $x^{\prime} \neq x$ or $y^{\prime} \neq y,\left\|x^{\prime} Q y^{\prime}\right\|<\|Q\|$. Hence $\left\|x P_{i} y\right\| \leq\|Q\|-2$.

Now we are ready to define the ordering $L$ that witnesses wcol ${ }_{2}[G, L] \leq 23$.

### 2.2 The ordering $L$

Let $x \in P_{i}, y \in P_{j}, i \neq j$. Then $x<_{L} y$ if and only if $i<j$. We inductively give the restriction of $L$ on $V\left(P_{i}\right), i \in[s]$. Fix any endpoint $r_{1}$ of $P_{1}$ and make it the first vertex in $P_{1}$ (the first vertex in $L$ too), then order $V\left(P_{1}\right)$ toward $r_{1}$. The path $P_{2}$ is a single vertex $r_{2}$, so $r_{2}$ is the third vertex in $L$.

Let $P_{i} \in \mathscr{P}, i \in[s] \backslash\{1,2\}$. If $v_{i}=v_{i}^{\prime}$ (recall that $v_{i}$ and $v_{i}^{\prime}$ are vertices in the strong parent of $P_{i}$ ) then denote arbitrary the endpoints of $P_{i}$ by $w_{i}$ and $w_{i}^{\prime}$ and set


Figure 2.1. $P_{a}$ the Strong Parent of $P_{i}$ and $P_{b}$ the Weak Parent of $P_{i}$
$r_{i}=w_{i}^{\prime}$. If $v_{i} \neq v_{i}^{\prime}$ then choose notations so that $v_{i}<_{L} v_{i}^{\prime}$. Let $r_{i} \in P_{i} \cap N\left(v_{i}\right)$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(w_{i}, r_{i}\right)$ is maximum over all the vertices in $P_{i} \cap N\left(v_{i}\right)$, see Figure 2.1 on page 30. Let $r_{i}$ be the first vertex in $P_{i}$ with respect to $L$, then order $V\left(P_{i}\right)$ toward $r_{i}$, i.e., choose any linear ordering of $V\left(P_{i}\right)$ satisfying that for any $x, y \in V\left(P_{i}\right)$ with $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, x\right)<\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, y\right)$ then $x<_{L} y$. Note that if $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, x\right)=\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, y\right)$, we arbitrary choose the vertex that comes first. The ordering $L$ is now completed.

Let $v \in P_{i}$ such that $v \neq r_{i}$. If they exist, let $v^{-}, v^{+} \in P_{i} \cap N(v)$ such that $v^{-}<_{L} v<_{L} v^{+}$. If the vertices $v^{-}$and $v^{+}$exist then they are unique.

Each vertex $y \in P_{i}$ gives a rise to two subpaths of $P_{i}$, they are $w_{i} P_{i} y$ and $y P_{i} w_{i}^{\prime}$. The next lemma follows from the definition of $L$.

Lemma 2.2.1. Let $x, y \in P_{i}, i \in[s]$ with $x<_{L} y$. Let $Q \in\left\{w_{i} P_{i} y, y P_{i} w_{i}^{\prime}\right\}$ such that $x \notin Q$, and let $z \in Q-y$. Then $y<_{L} z$.

Proof. As $x<_{L} y, \operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, x\right) \leq \operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, y\right)$. Thus $r_{i} \in P_{i}-Q$. So $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, y\right)<$ $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, z\right)$.

Before we prove $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[G, L] \leq 23$ for every planar graph $G$, we illustrate the construction of $\mathscr{P}$ and the ordering $L$ by giving an example of a maximal planar graph $G$ such that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[G, L]=23$.

### 2.3 Example

The graph $G$ is given in Figure 2.2 on page 32. It is easy to see that $G$ is a planar graph and every face is triangulated. We illustrate the decomposition $\mathscr{P}$ together with the ordering $L$. The first path $P_{1}$ is the edge $u_{1} u_{2}$ which is an edge incident to the outer face. Let $u_{1}, u_{2}$ be the first and second vertices with respect to $L$ respectively. The ordering $L$ is represented by purple numerals next to the vertices. The second path $P_{2}$ is the vertex $u_{3}$ which is the vertex of the outer face that is not in $P_{1}$. The vertex $u_{3}$ is the third vertex in $L$.

Now there is only one component $C_{3}$ in $G\left[P_{\geq 3}\right]$. The edge $u_{1} u_{3}$ belongs to the boundary of a triangle face incident to a unique vertex (which is $u_{4}$ ) in $C_{3}$. Similar is true for $u_{2} u_{3}$, and the vertex associated with $u_{2} u_{3}$ is $u_{9}$. Now we pick an isometric path between $u_{4}$ and $u_{9}$ in $C_{3}$ satisfying $(* *)$, so this path is $P_{3}:=u_{4} u_{5} u_{6} u_{7} u_{8} u_{9}$. The path $P_{3}$ is adjacent to $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$, and as $1<2, P_{1}$ is the strong parent of $P_{3}$. Since $u_{1}<_{L} u_{2}, v_{3}=u_{1}, v_{3}^{\prime}=u_{2}, w_{3}=u_{4}, w_{3}^{\prime}=u_{9}$. As $N\left(v_{3}\right) \cap P_{3}=\left\{u_{4}, u_{5}, u_{6}, u_{7}\right\}$ and $u_{7}$ is the farthest of these from $w_{3}, r_{3}=u_{7}$. There are more than one way to order $V\left(P_{3}\right)$, for example the second vertex could be $u_{6}$ or $u_{8}$. Order $V\left(P_{3}\right)$ as $u_{7}<_{L} u_{6}<_{L} u_{8}<_{L} u_{5}<_{L} u_{9}<_{L} u_{4}$.

There is only one component $C_{4}$ in $G\left[P_{\geq 4}\right]$. The next path in $\mathscr{P}$ has to be an isometric path between $u_{10}$ and $u_{14}$ in $C_{4}$ satisfying $(* *)$. This path is $P_{4}:=$ $u_{10} u_{11} u_{12} u_{13} u_{14}$. The strong parent of $P_{4}$ is $P_{2}$, and as $P_{2}$ is the single vertex $u_{3}$


Figure 2.2. A Planar Graph $G$ and an Ordering $L$ Satisfying wcol $_{2}[G, L]=23$. The Ordering $L$ is Represented by the Purple Numbers
then $v_{4}=v_{4^{\prime}}=u_{3}$. Any endpoint of $P_{4}$ is a candidate for $w_{4}$. Let $w_{4}=u_{14}$, so $r_{4}=w_{4}^{\prime}=u_{10}$ and the order of $V\left(P_{4}\right)$ is $u_{10}<_{L} u_{11}<_{L} u_{12}<_{L} u_{13}<_{L} u_{14}$.

Denote the unique component in $G\left[P_{\geq 5}\right]$ by $C_{5}$. The next path in $\mathscr{P}$ has to be an isometric path between $u_{15}$ and $u_{18}$ in $C_{5}$ satisfying $(* *)$. This path is $P_{5}:=$ $u_{15} u_{16} u_{17} u_{18}$. The strong parent of $P_{5}$ is $P_{3}$, as $u_{9}<_{L} u_{4}, v_{5}=u_{9}$ and $v_{5}^{\prime}=u_{4}$. As $N\left(v_{5}\right) \cap P_{5}=\left\{u_{18}\right\}, r_{5}=u_{18}$ and the order of $V\left(P_{5}\right)$ is $u_{18}<_{L} u_{17}<_{L} u_{16}<_{L} u_{15}$.

Denote the unique component in $G\left[P_{\geq 6}\right]$ by $C_{6}$. The next path in $\mathscr{P}$ is an isometric path between $u_{19}$ and $u_{22}$ in $C_{6}$ satisfying $(* *)$. This path is $P_{6}:=u_{19} u_{20} u_{21} u_{22}$. The strong parent of $P_{6}$ is $P_{4}$ and $v_{6}=v_{6}^{\prime}=u_{12}$. So any endpoint of $P_{6}$ is a candidate for $w_{6}$. Choose $u_{22}$ to be $w_{6}$, so $r_{6}=w_{6}^{\prime}=u_{19}$ and the order of $V\left(P_{6}\right)$ is $u_{19}<_{L} u_{20}<_{L} u_{21}<_{L} u_{22}$.

Denote the unique component in $G\left[P_{\geq 7}\right]$ by $C_{7}$. The next path is $P_{7}:=u_{23} u_{24} u_{25} u_{26}$ since it is an isometric path between $u_{23}$ and $u_{26}$ satisfying $(* *)$. The strong parent of $P_{7}$ is $P_{5}$ and as $u_{17}<_{L} u_{15}, v_{7}=u_{17}$ and $v_{7}^{\prime}=u_{15}$. As $N\left(v_{7}\right) \cap P_{7}=\left\{u_{26}\right\}, r_{7}=u_{26}$ and so the order of $V\left(P_{7}\right)$ is $u_{26}<_{L} u_{25}<_{L} u_{24}<_{L} u_{23}$. The next path $P_{8}$ in $\mathscr{P}$ has to be a path between $u_{27}$ and $u_{31}$ in $G\left[P_{\geq 8}\right]$; since there is only one such path, $P_{8}:=u_{27} u_{28} u_{29} u_{30} u_{31}$. The strong parent of $P_{8}$ is $P_{5}$, as $u_{17}{ }_{L} u_{15}, v_{8}=u_{17}$ and $v_{8}^{\prime}=u_{15}$. So $w_{8}=u_{31}$ and $w_{8}^{\prime}=u_{27}$. As $N\left(v_{8}\right) \cap P_{8}=\left\{u_{29}, u_{30}, u_{31}\right\}$ and $u_{29}$ is the farthest of these from $w_{8}, r_{8}=u_{29}$. There are more than way to order the $V\left(P_{8}\right)$ toward $r_{8}$, we choose the order $u_{29}<_{L} u_{28}<_{L} u_{30}<_{L} u_{27}<_{L} u_{31}$. The decomposition $\mathscr{P}$ and the ordering $L$ are now completed.

Claim 2.3.1. $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}\left[L, u_{29}\right]=23$.
For simplicity we write $v$ for $u_{29}$, and we denote the set of vertices $\mathrm{Wcol}_{2}[G, L, v]$ and the number $\mathrm{wcol}_{2}[G, L, v]$ by $\mathrm{W}(v)$ and $\mathrm{w}(v)$ respectively. Let $A:=$ $\left\{P_{3}, P_{4}, P_{5}, P_{6}, P_{7}, P_{8}\right\}$. Observe that $\mathrm{W}(v) \subseteq \bigcup_{P \in A} P$ as $v$ is with distance greater than two from any vertex in $P_{1} \cup P_{2}$. The vertex $v$ is the smallest in $P_{8}$, so $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{8}\right|=1$. Now we find $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{7}\right|$. Both $u_{24}, u_{25} \in N(v)$ and the paths $v u_{28} u_{23}, v u_{30} u_{26}$ are witnessing $u_{23}, u_{26} \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$ respectively. Thus $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{7}\right|=4$. The four paths $v u_{24} u_{19}, v u_{25} u_{20}, v u_{25} u_{21}, v u_{25} u_{22}$ are witnessing $u_{19}, u_{20}, u_{21}, u_{22} \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$ respectively. Thus $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{6}\right|=4$. The vertices $u_{15}, u_{16}, u_{17}$ are neighbors of $v$ and the path $v u_{17} u_{18}$ is witnessing $u_{18} \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$. Thus $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{5}\right|=4$. The vertex $u_{15}$ is a common
neighbor of $v, u_{10}, u_{11}, u_{12}$, so $\left\{u_{10}, u_{11}, u_{12}\right\} \subseteq \mathrm{W}(v)$. Similarly, the vertex $u_{17}$ is a common neighbor of $v, u_{13}, u_{14}$, so $\left\{u_{13}, u_{14}\right\} \subseteq \mathrm{W}(v)$. Thus $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{4}\right|=5$. The five paths $v u_{15} u_{4}, v u_{15} u_{5}, v u_{16} u_{6}, v u_{16} u_{7}, v u_{17} u_{8}$ are witnessing $u_{4}, u_{5}, u_{6}, u_{7}, u_{8} \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$ respectively. Observe that $\operatorname{dist}\left(v, u_{9}\right)>2$, so $u_{9} \notin \mathrm{~W}(v)$, thus $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{3}\right|=5$. Hence all in all $\mathrm{w}(v)=23$.

### 2.4 Proof of Theorem 2.0.1

Theorem 2.4.1. $\mathrm{wcol}_{2}[G, L] \leq 23$.

Proof. Let $v \in G$; then $v \in P_{k}$ for some $k \in[s]$. Recall that $\mathrm{W}(v)$ denotes the set of vertices $\mathrm{Wcol}_{2}[G, L, v]$, and $\mathrm{w}(v)$ denotes the number $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[G, L, v]$.

Claim 2.4.2. $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{k}\right| \leq 3$.

Proof. Follows from Lemma 2.1.5 and Lemma 2.2.1.

If $k \leq 2$ then $\mathrm{W}(v) \subseteq P_{1} \cup P_{2}$. So $\mathrm{w}(v) \leq 3$ and we are done. So assume $k \geq 3$. Then $P_{k}$ is adjacent to exactly two paths $P_{h}, P_{j} \in\left\{P_{1}, \ldots, P_{k-1}\right\}, h<j$. So $P_{h}$ is the strong parent of $P_{k}$, and $P_{j}$ is the weak parent of $P_{k}$. Observe that $P_{h}$ is a parent of $P_{j}$ too. If $j \leq 2$ then $h=1, j=2$ and $\mathrm{W}(v) \subseteq P_{1} \cup P_{2} \cup P_{k}$; from Lemma 1.2.6, $\mathrm{w}(v) \leq 2 * 5+3=13$. So assume $j \geq 3$, then $P_{j}$ is adjacent to exactly two paths in $\left\{P_{1}, \ldots, P_{j-1}\right\}$, one of them is $P_{h}$ and the other one is $P_{i}$, say. Note that $P_{i}$ is adjacent to $P_{h}$, so either $P_{h}$ is a parent of $P_{i}$ or $P_{i}$ is a parent of $P_{h}$. If $h \leq 2$ then $\mathrm{W}(v) \subseteq P_{1} \cup P_{2} \cup P_{i} \cup P_{j} \cup P_{k} ;$ so $\mathrm{w}(v) \leq 4 * 5+3=23$. So assume $h \geq 3$; then $P_{h}$ is adjacent to exactly two paths $P_{f}, P_{g} \in\left\{P_{1}, \ldots, P_{h-1}\right\}$. If $i<h$ then $i \in\{f, g\}$, so $\mathrm{W}(v) \subseteq P_{f} \cup P_{g} \cup P_{h} \cup P_{j} \cup P_{k}$, and thus $\mathrm{w}(v) \leq 4 * 5+3=23$. So assume $h<i$. See Figure 2.3 on page 35 .


Figure 2.3. $\quad V(D) \subseteq P_{f} \cup P_{h}$

Let $A:=\left\{P_{f}, P_{g}, P_{h}, P_{i}, P_{j}, P_{k}\right\}$. Let $u \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$. Then $u \in P$ for some $P \in A$. Therefore $\mathrm{w}(v)=\sum_{P \in A}|\mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P|$. In the remainder of this proof we estimate $|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P|$ for each $P \in A$.

Claim 2.4.3. $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j}\right| \leq 4$.

Proof. Recall that $V\left(D_{j}\right) \subseteq P_{h} \cup P_{i}$ as $P_{h}$ and $P_{i}$ are the strong and weak parents of $P_{j}$. Let $u, u^{\prime} \in \mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{j}}\left(u, u^{\prime}\right)$ is maximum. There exist two paths each of length at most two in $O_{j, 1} \cup P_{j}$ (as $v \in O_{j, 1}$ ) witnessing that $u \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$ and $u^{\prime} \in \mathrm{W}(v)$. Those two paths combined contain a path $Q$ of length at most four between $u$ and $u^{\prime}$ in $O_{j, 1} \cup P_{j}$. If $v \notin Q$ then $\left\|u P_{j} u^{\prime}\right\| \leq\|Q\| \leq 2$, if $v \in Q$
then $Q$ contains a vertex in $O_{j, 1}$; from Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|u P_{j} u^{\prime}\right\| \leq\|Q\|-1 \leq 3$. Thus $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j}\right| \leq 4$.

Claim 2.4.4. If $x, y \in N(v) \cap P_{j}, x \neq y$ then $x y \in P_{j}$.
Proof. The path $x v y$ is a path in $O_{j, 1} \cup P_{j}$ and $v \in O_{j, 1}$. From Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|x P_{j} y\right\| \leq\|x v y\|-1=1$. Thus $x y \in P_{j}$.

Claim 2.4.5. $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{i}\right| \leq 4$.

Proof. Let $y_{1}, y_{2} \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{i}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(y_{1}, y_{2}\right)$ is maximum. Let $Q_{1}$ be a path witnessing $y_{1} \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$ and $Q_{2}$ a path witnessing $y_{2} \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$. As $P_{k}$ is not adjacent to $P_{i}$, both $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ are of length two, say $Q_{1}=v y^{\prime} y_{1}, Q_{2}=v y^{\prime \prime} y_{2}$. Note that $Q_{1}, Q_{2} \subseteq C_{i}$ and $y^{\prime}, y^{\prime \prime} \in P_{j} \cup P_{h}$. As $h<i$, every vertex in $P_{h}$ is smaller with respect to $L$ than every vertex in $P_{i}$. From the definition of weak reachability, $y^{\prime}, y^{\prime \prime} \in P_{j}$. If $y^{\prime}=y^{\prime \prime}$ then $\left\|y_{1} P_{i} y_{2}\right\| \leq\left\|y_{1} y^{\prime} y_{2}\right\| \leq 2$. Assume that $y^{\prime} \neq y^{\prime \prime}$, then $y^{\prime}, y^{\prime \prime} \in N(v) \cap P_{j}$. From Claim 2.4.4, $y^{\prime} y^{\prime \prime} \in P_{j}$, so $\left\|y_{1} P_{i} y_{2}\right\| \leq\left\|y_{1} y^{\prime} y^{\prime \prime} y_{2}\right\|=3$. Thus $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{i}\right| \leq 4$.

Let $C$ be the component of $G\left[P_{\geq h+1}\right]$ containing $v$. Let $D$ be the cycle forming the boundary of the region of $R^{2} \backslash G\left[P_{1} \cup \ldots \cup P_{h}\right]$ in which $C$ lies. Then either $V(D) \subseteq P_{f} \cup P_{h}$ or $V(D) \subseteq P_{g} \cup P_{h}$. Assume without loss of generality that $V(D) \subseteq P_{f} \cup P_{h}$, see the example in Figure 2.3 on page 35. Set

$$
R:=\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{k}\right|+\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right|+\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| .
$$

Claim 2.4.6. If $v=r_{k}$ then $R \leq 10$.

Proof. Clearly, $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{k}\right|=1$. Note that $v \in N\left(v_{k}\right)$.
Case 1: $v \notin N\left(v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ or $v_{k}=v_{k}^{\prime}$.
Note that $v_{k}, v_{k}^{\prime} \in P_{h}$ as $P_{h}$ is the strong parent of $P_{k}$. Let $z \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{f}$, and let $Q$ be a path witnessing $z \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$. As $P_{k}$ is not adjacent to $P_{f}, Q$ has to be of length
exactly two. So $Q=v z^{\prime} z$ where $z^{\prime} \in P_{h} \cup P_{j}$. The path $P_{j}$ is not adjacent to $P_{f}$, so $z^{\prime} \in P_{h}$. Thus either $z^{\prime}=v_{k}$ or $z^{\prime}=v_{k}^{\prime}$. Since $v \notin N\left(v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ or $v_{k}=v_{k}^{\prime}, z^{\prime}=v_{k}$. The vertex $v_{k}$ has at most three neighbors in $P_{f}$ as $P_{f}$ is an isometric path in $C_{f}$. Thus $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| \leq 3$. From Lemma 1.2.6, $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 5$. So $R \leq 9$.

Case 2: $v \in N\left(v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ and $v_{k} \neq v_{k}^{\prime}$.
If $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 4$ then $R \leq 10$ as $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| \leq 5$. So assume that $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right|=5$. Let $P \in\left\{w_{h} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}, v_{k}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h}^{\prime}\right\}$ such that $v_{k} \in P$. Assume that $\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h} \subseteq P$. Let $u \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{h}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(u, v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ is maximum, and let $Q$ be a path witnessing $u \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$. Since $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right|=5$, $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(u, v_{k}^{\prime}\right) \geq 4$. On the other hand, $v_{k}^{\prime} v Q u$ is a path in $C_{h}$ of length at most three, a contradiction. Thus there exists a vertex $w \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{h}$ such that $w \in P_{h}-P$. From Lemma 2.2.1, $V\left(v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}\right)<_{L} w$. As $w \notin v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}, w$ is not a neighbor of $v$. So any path $U$ witnessing $w \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$ has to be of length two, say $U=v w^{\prime} w$ where $w^{\prime} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$ or $w^{\prime} \in z_{k} P_{j} z_{k}^{\prime}$. As $V\left(v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}\right)<_{L} w$, $w^{\prime} \notin v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$. Thus $w^{\prime} \in z_{k} P_{j} z_{k}^{\prime}$. It means that $N\left(v_{k}^{\prime}\right) \cap P_{f}=\phi$ as $G$ is planar graph. So $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| \leq 3\left(v_{k}\right.$ has at most three neighbors in $\left.P_{f}\right)$. Thus $R \leq 9$.

Claim 2.4.7. If $v \neq r_{k}$ and $v_{k}=v_{k}^{\prime}$ then $R \leq 10$.

Proof. Recall that $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{k}\right| \leq 3$. If $v \notin N\left(v_{k}\right)$ then $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right|=0$. With $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 5$ we have $R \leq 8$. So assume $v \in N\left(v_{k}\right)$. The vertex $v_{k}$ has at most three neighbors in $P_{f}$, so $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| \leq 3$. If also $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 4$ then $R \leq 10$ and we are done. So assume $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right|=5$. If they exist, let $t_{1}$ and $t_{1}^{\prime}$ be the neighbors of $v_{k}$ in $P_{h}$. Let $D_{4}^{\prime}$ be the cycle $w_{k} P_{k} w_{k}^{\prime} v_{k} w_{k}$ and $O_{4}^{\prime}$ be the interior of $D_{4}^{\prime}$, see Figure 2.4 on page 38. Observe that $N(v) \cap P_{h} \subseteq\left\{v_{k}\right\}$. If $v v^{\prime} z$ is a path witnessing $z \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{h}$ where $v^{\prime} \in O_{4}^{\prime} \cup\left\{v^{-}, v^{+}, v_{k}\right\}$ then $z \in\left\{v_{k}, t_{1}, t_{1}^{\prime}\right\}$. Since $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right|=5$, there exist two vertices $z \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{h} \backslash\left\{v_{k}, t_{1}, t_{1}^{\prime}\right\}$ such that the witnessing path is of the form $v v^{\prime} z$ where $v^{\prime} \in\left\{z_{k}, z_{k}^{\prime}\right\}$. Call those two vertices $t_{2}$


Figure 2.4. $v_{k}=v_{k}^{\prime}, D_{4}^{\prime}$ is the Brown Cycle in Claim 2.4.7
and $t_{2}^{\prime}$. Clearly, $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(v_{k}, t_{2}\right), \operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(v_{k}, t_{2}^{\prime}\right) \geq 2$. Assume without loss of generality that $v z_{k} t_{2}$ is the path witnessing $t_{2} \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$. Since $v_{k} P_{h} t_{2}$ is isometric and $v_{k} z_{k} t_{2}$ is a path in $C_{h},\left\|v_{k} P_{h} t_{2}\right\|=2$, fix notation so that $v_{k} t_{1} t_{2} \subseteq P_{h}$. Thus $v z_{k}^{\prime} t_{2}^{\prime}$ must be the path witnessing $t_{2}^{\prime} \in \mathrm{W}(v)$ and $v_{k} P_{h} t_{2}^{\prime}=v_{k} t_{1}^{\prime} t_{2}^{\prime}$. Since $G$ is planar, $v_{k}$ cannot have neighbors in $P_{f}$. Thus $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right|=0$ and $R \leq 8$.

If it exists, let $x_{1} \in N\left(r_{k}\right) \cap w_{k} P_{k} r_{k}$, and if it exists, let $x_{2} \in N\left(r_{k}\right) \cap r_{k} P_{k} w_{k}^{\prime}$. If $x_{i}, i \in[2]$ exists then it is unique as $P_{k}$ is isometric.

Claim 2.4.8. If $v \neq r_{k}, v_{k} \neq v_{k}^{\prime}$ and $v \in x_{2} P_{k} w_{k}^{\prime}$ then $R \leq 10$.

Proof. Observe that $v \notin N\left(v_{k}\right)$. If also $v \notin N\left(v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ then $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right|=0$. As $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 5$ and $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{k}\right| \leq 3$ we get $R \leq 8$. So assume that $v \in N\left(v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$. The vertex $v_{k}^{\prime}$ has at most three neighbors in $P_{f}$, so $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| \leq 3$. If also $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 4$ then $R \leq 10$. So assume that $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right|=5$. Let $P \in\left\{w_{h} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}, v_{k}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h}^{\prime}\right\}$ such that


Figure 2.5. $D_{4}^{\prime}$ is the Brown Cycle in the First Drawing, the Second Drawing Illustrates the Possible Neighbors of $v^{-}$if $v^{-}=r_{k}$
$v_{k} \in P$. As in Case 2 of Claim 2.4.6, there exists a vertex $w \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{h}$ such that $w \in P_{h}-P, v_{k}^{\prime}<_{L} w$ and any path witnessing $w \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$ is of the form $v w^{\prime} w$ where $w^{\prime} \in z_{k} P_{j} z_{k}^{\prime}$. The graph $G$ is a planar, so $N\left(v_{k}^{\prime}\right) \cap P_{f}=\phi$. This gives $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right|=0$, so $R \leq 8$.

Claim 2.4.9. If $v \neq r_{k}, v_{k} \neq v_{k}^{\prime}$ and $v \in w_{k} P_{k} x_{1}$ then $R+\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j}\right| \leq 14$.

Proof. Recall that $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j}\right| \leq 4$ (Claim 2.4.3). So if we show that $R \leq 10$ then we are done. As $G$ is planar and $r_{k} v_{k} \in G, v \notin N\left(v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$. If also $v \notin N\left(v_{k}\right)$ then $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right|=0$. As $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 5$ and $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{k}\right| \leq 3$ we get $R \leq 8$. Assume that $v \in N\left(v_{k}\right)$. The vertex $v_{k}$ has at most three neighbors in $P_{f}$, so $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| \leq 3$. If
$\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 4$ or $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| \leq 2$ then $R \leq 10$. So assume that $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right|=5$ and $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{f}\right|=3$. Clearly, $R \leq 5+2 * 3=11$. It suffices to prove that $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j}\right| \leq 3$.

In this paragraph, we prove that $v$ and $z_{k}^{\prime}$ are neighbors. Let $D_{4}^{\prime}$ be the cycle $w_{k} P_{k} r_{k} v_{k} w_{k}$ and $O_{4}^{\prime}$ be the interior of $D_{4}^{\prime}$, see Figure 2.5 on page 39. Then $v \in D_{4}^{\prime}$ and $N(v) \cap D_{4}^{\prime}=\left\{v^{-}, v^{+}, v_{k}\right\}$; note that in this case $v^{-}$exists and if $v \neq w_{k}$ then $v^{+}$ exists too. Let $z \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{h}$, and let $Q$ be a path witnessing that $z \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$. Then $\left\{v_{k}, v^{-}, v^{+}, z_{k}, z_{k}^{\prime}\right\} \cap(Q-v) \neq \phi$. If it exists, let $t \in N\left(v_{k}\right)$ such that $t \in P_{h}-v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$. Let $t^{\prime} \in N\left(v_{k}\right) \cap v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$, and if it exists, let $t^{\prime \prime} \in N\left(t^{\prime}\right) \cap\left(P_{h}-v_{k}\right)$. If $v_{k} \in Q$ then $z \in\left\{v_{k}, t, t^{\prime}\right\}$. If $v^{-} \in Q$ and $v^{-} \neq r_{k}$ then $z=v_{k}$. If $v^{-} \in Q$ and $v^{-}=r_{k}$ then $z \in\left\{v_{k}, t^{\prime}, t^{\prime \prime}\right\}$. If $v^{+} \in Q$ then $z=v_{k}$, see Figure 2.5 on page 39. As $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{h}\right|=5$ and $\left|\left\{v_{k}, t, t^{\prime}, t^{\prime \prime}\right\}\right|=4$, there exists a vertex $z \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{h} \backslash\left\{v_{k}, t, t^{\prime}, t^{\prime \prime}\right\}$ and a path $Q$ witnessing $z \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$ such that $\left\{z_{k}, z_{k}^{\prime}\right\} \cap Q \neq \phi$. Since $v_{k}$ has three neighbors in $P_{f}$ and $G$ is planar, $Q=v z_{k}^{\prime} z$. So $v$ and $z_{k}^{\prime}$ are neighbors.

If $z_{k}=z_{k}^{\prime}$ then directly $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j}\right| \leq 3\left(z_{k}\right.$ and the two unique neighbors of $z_{k}$ in $P_{j}$, if they exist). So assume that $z_{k} \neq z_{k}^{\prime}$.

We show in this paragraph that $z_{k}<_{L} z_{k}^{\prime}$. The strong parent of $P_{j}$ is $P_{h}$, so $\left\{v_{j}, v_{j}^{\prime}\right\} \subseteq V\left(P_{h}\right)$. From the construction of $\mathscr{P}, v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime} \subseteq v_{j} P_{h} v_{j}^{\prime}$. Let $y \in\left\{v_{j}, v_{j}^{\prime}\right\}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(y, v_{k}\right) \leq \operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(y, v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ and let $y^{\prime} \in\left\{v_{j}, v_{j}^{\prime}\right\} \backslash\{y\}$. So $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(y^{\prime}, v_{k}^{\prime}\right) \leq$ $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(y^{\prime}, v_{k}\right)$. See the example in Figure 2.6 on page 41. As $v_{k}$ has three neighbors in $P_{f}$ and $G$ is planar, $y=v_{k}$. Since $y=v_{k}<_{L} v_{k}^{\prime}$, Lemma 2.2.1 tells us that $v_{k}^{\prime} \leq_{L} y^{\prime}$. So $y<_{L} y^{\prime}, y=v_{j}=v_{k}$ and $y^{\prime}=v_{j}^{\prime}$. Since $z_{k} v_{k} \in E(G), z_{k} \in N\left(v_{j}\right) \cap P_{j}$ and $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{j}}\left(w_{j}, z_{k}\right)$ is maximum over all vertices in $N\left(v_{j}\right) \cap P_{j}$. So $z_{k}=r_{j}$, i.e., $z_{k}$ is the minimum vertex in $P_{j}$ with respect to $L$. Hence $z_{k}<_{L} z_{k}^{\prime}$.

Assume that there exists $u \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap P_{j}$ such that $u \in z_{k}^{\prime} P_{j} w_{j}^{\prime}-z_{k}^{\prime}$. Then $u$ is not a neighbor of $v$ as $u \notin z_{k} P_{j} z_{k}^{\prime}$. Let $U$ be a path witnessing $u \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$, then $U=v u^{\prime} u$


Figure 2.6. $y$ and $y^{\prime}$
where $u^{\prime} \in z_{k} P_{j} z_{k}^{\prime} \cup v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$. As $h<j, u^{\prime} \in z_{k} P_{j} z_{k}^{\prime}$. The path $P_{j}$ is isometric so $u^{\prime}=z_{k}^{\prime}$. From Lemma 2.2.1, $z_{k}^{\prime}{\alpha_{L}} u$ which is in contradiction to the definition of weak reachability. Thus $\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j} \subseteq w_{j} P_{j} z_{k}^{\prime}$.

Let $l \in \mathrm{~W}(v) \cap w_{j} P_{j} z_{k}^{\prime}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{j}}\left(z_{k}^{\prime}, l\right)$ is maximum. Since $z_{k}^{\prime} \in N(v)$ and $l \in \mathrm{~W}(v)$, there exists a path $U$ of length at most three between $z_{k}^{\prime}$ and $l$ in $O_{j, 1} \cup P_{j}$. If $v \notin U$ then $U$ is of length less than three; if $v \in U$ then from Lemma 2.1.5 we have $\left\|l P_{j} z_{k}^{\prime}\right\| \leq\|U\|-1 \leq 2 . \operatorname{Thus} \operatorname{dist}_{P_{j}}\left(l, z_{k}^{\prime}\right) \leq 2$ which means that $\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j}\right| \leq 3$.

Claim 2.4.10. $R+\left|\mathrm{W}(v) \cap P_{j}\right| \leq 14$.

Proof. Follows from Claims 2.4.3, 2.4.6, 2.4.7, 2.4.8 and 2.4.9.

From Lemma 1.2.6, Claims 2.4.5 and 2.4.10, $\mathrm{w}(v) \leq 4+14+5=23$.

## Chapter 3

## ON THE CHROMATIC NUMBER OF THE EXACT DISTANCE-3 GRAPHS OF PLANAR GRAPHS

In this chapter, we improve the best known upper bound of the chromatic numbers of the exact distance-3 graphs $G^{[\text {Lh } 3]}$ of planar graphs $G$, which is 105 , to 95 . We also improve the best known lower bound, which is 7 , to 9 .

Theorem 3.0.1. Let $G$ be a planar graph. Then $\chi\left(G^{[43]}\right) \leq 95$.

Recall that $\chi\left(G^{[[3]]}\right) \leq \operatorname{dcol}_{5}(G)$ (Theorem 1.4.5), so it suffices to prove that $\operatorname{dcol}_{5}(G) \leq 95$ for every planar graph $G$.

We may assume that $G$ is a maximal planar graph as $\operatorname{dcol}_{r}(G)$ does not increase by removing edges.

Recall the isometric-path decomposition $\mathscr{P}=\left(P_{1}, \ldots, P_{s}\right)$ constructed in Section 1.2. We define a liner ordering $L$ of $V(G)$ as follows. For each $x \in P_{i}, y \in P_{j}$ with $i<j$, put $x<_{L} y$. For every $i \in[s]$, fix any end point $r_{i}$ of $P_{i}$ and make it the $L$-smallest vertex in $V\left(P_{i}\right)$, then order $V\left(P_{i}\right)$ toward this end, i.e., if $x, y \in P_{i}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, x\right)<\operatorname{dist}_{P_{i}}\left(r_{i}, y\right)$ then put $x<_{L} y$.

Let $v \in G$. We denote the number $\operatorname{dcol}_{5}[G, L, v]$ and the set $\operatorname{Dcol}_{5}[G, L, v]$ by $\operatorname{dc}(v)$ and $\mathrm{Dc}(v)$ respectively.

Lemma 3.0.2. Let $u \in P_{i}$ and $v \in P_{k}, i<k$. Assume that $Q_{u}:=u u^{\prime} u^{\prime \prime} \ldots v$ is a path witnessing that $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $u^{\prime \prime} Q_{u} v-u^{\prime \prime} \subseteq C_{k}$.

Proof. The definition of $\operatorname{Dc}(v)$ tells us that $v<_{L} V\left(u^{\circ \prime} Q_{u} \stackrel{\circ}{v}\right)$ (if $\left.V\left(u^{\prime \prime} Q_{u} \stackrel{\circ}{v}\right) \neq \phi\right)$. As $V\left(D_{k}\right)<_{L} v, D_{k} \cap u^{\prime \prime} Q_{u} \stackrel{\circ}{v}=\phi$, and as $v \in C_{k}, u^{\prime \prime} Q_{u} v-u^{\prime \prime} \subseteq C_{k}$.

### 3.1 Proof of Theorem 3.0.1

Theorem 3.1.1. $\operatorname{dcol}_{5}[G, L] \leq 95$.

First we prove an easy case. Then we name and count the number of paths $P \in \mathscr{P}$ such that $\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P \neq \phi$ where $v$ is a fixed vertex in $G$. We will see that the number of such paths is at most ten. After that, throughout a series of claims, we bound $|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P|$ for each one of those paths. The proof will be a direct result from the claims and the fact that $\operatorname{dc}(v)=\sum_{P \in \mathscr{P}}|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P|$.

Claim 3.1.2. Let $v \in G$. If $|\{P \in \mathscr{P}: \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P \neq \phi\}| \leq 9$ then $\operatorname{dc}(v) \leq 94$.

Proof. Let $P_{\alpha} \in \mathscr{P}$ such that $\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{\alpha} \neq \phi$. From the construction of $\mathscr{P}, P_{\alpha}$ is isometric in $G^{\prime}:=G\left[P_{\geq \alpha}\right]$, and from the definition of $\operatorname{Dc}(v), \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{\alpha} \subseteq N_{5}^{G^{\prime}}[v] \cap P_{\alpha}$. From Lemma 1.2.6, $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{\alpha}\right| \leq 11$. Let $P_{k}$ be the path containing $v$. From the restriction of $L$ on $V\left(P_{k}\right), \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{k} \subseteq r_{k} P_{k} v$; let $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{k}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{k}}(u, v)$ is maximum. Then $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{k}}(u, v) \leq 5$, and so $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{k}\right| \leq 6$. Thus $\mathrm{dc}(v) \leq 8 * 11+6=94$.

Claim 3.1.3. For every $v \in G,|\{P \in \mathscr{P}: \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P \neq \phi\}| \leq 10$.
Proof. Let $k \in[s]$ such that $v \in P_{k}$. Assume that $k \geq 3$. Let $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \backslash\{v\}$, as $\operatorname{Dc}(v) \backslash\{v\}<_{L} v, u \in V\left(P_{1} \cup \ldots \cup P_{k}\right)$. Let $Q_{u}:=u_{0} \ldots u_{q}$ be a path witnessing that $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$ where $u_{0}=u$ and $u_{q}=v$. Let $i=\max \left\{j \in[q-1] \cup\{0\}: u_{j}<_{L} v\right\}$, then $i$ exists because $u_{0}<_{L} v$, and from the definition of $\operatorname{Dc}(v), i \leq 2$.

Case 1: $i=0$.
As $k \geq 3, P_{k}$ has a strong parent, call it $P_{h}$, and a weak parent, call it $P_{l}$ (so $\left.h<l<k\right)$. Assume that $u \notin P_{k}$. From Lemma 2.1.2, $u Q_{u} v$ intersects with $P_{l} \cup P_{h}$. Since $u$ is
the only vertex in $u Q_{u} v$ satisfying that $u<_{L} v, u \in P_{l} \cup P_{h}$. Thus if $i=0$ then $u \in P_{k} \cup P_{l} \cup P_{h}$.

Case 2: $i=1$.
By replacing $u$ with $u_{1}$ in Case 1, we get $u_{1} \in P_{k} \cup P_{l} \cup P_{h}$. From the definition of $\operatorname{Dc}(v), u\left(=u_{0}\right)<_{L} u_{1}$. If $u_{1} \in P_{k}$ then again $u \in P_{k} \cup P_{l} \cup P_{h}$ (Lemma 2.1.2). Assume that $u_{1} \in P_{h}$ and $h \geq 3$. Denote the strong parent of $P_{h}$ by $P_{g}$, and the weak parent by $P_{f}$. Then either $u \in P_{h}$, or else from Lemma 2.1.2, $u \in P_{f} \cup P_{g}$. Assume that $u_{1} \in P_{l}$ and $l \geq 3$. Recall that $P_{l}$ and $P_{h}$ are the parents of $P_{k}$ and $h<l$. From Lemma 2.1.3, $P_{h}$ is a parent of $P_{l}$. Denote the other parent of $P_{l}$ by $P_{m}$. Then either $u \in P_{l}$ or , $u \in P_{m} \cup P_{h}$ (Lemma 2.1.2). Thus if $i=1$ then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in A:=\{k, l, m, h, f, g\}$.

We need the following observation for the next case:
( $\star$ ) If $m<h$ then $P_{m}$ is a parent of $P_{h}$ (Lemma 2.1.3). As $P_{g}$ and $P_{f}$ are the strong and weak parents of $P_{h}, m \in\{f, g\}$.

Case 3: $i=2$.
By replacing $u$ with $u_{2}$ in Case 1, we get $u_{2} \in P_{k} \cup P_{l} \cup P_{h}$. From the definition of $\operatorname{Dc}(v), u<_{L}\left\{u_{1}, u_{2}\right\}$. Assume that $u_{2}<_{L} u_{1}$. By replacing $u_{1}$ with $u_{2}$ in Case 2, we get $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in A$. Assume now that $u_{1}<_{L} u_{2}$, so $u<_{L} u_{1}<_{L} u_{2}$. By replacing $u_{1}$ with $u_{2}$ and replacing $u$ with $u_{1}$ in Case 2, we get $u_{1} \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in A$. If $u_{1} \in P_{k} \cup P_{l} \cup P_{h}$ then again $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in A$. Assume that $u_{1} \in P_{g}$ and $g \geq 3$. Denote the strong parent of $P_{g}$ by $P_{b}$, and the weak parent by $P_{c}$. From Lemma 2.1.2, $u \in P_{g} \cup P_{c} \cup P_{b}$. Assume that $u_{1} \in P_{f}$ and $f \geq 3$. Recall that $P_{f}$ and $P_{g}$ are the parents of $P_{h}$ and $g<f$, so $P_{g}$ is a parent of $P_{f}$. Denote the other parent of $P_{f}$ by $P_{d}$. From Lemma 2.1.2, $u \in P_{f} \cup P_{d} \cup P_{g}$.


Figure 3.1. $p_{j}, j \in B$
Assume that $u_{1} \in P_{m}$ and $m \notin\{f, g\}$, so $h<m$ (observation ( $\star$ )). Recall that $P_{m}$ and $P_{h}$ are the parents of $P_{l}$, so $P_{h}$ is a parent of $P_{m}$. Denote the other parent of $P_{m}$ by $P_{n}$. From Lemma 2.1.2, $u \in P_{m} \cup P_{n} \cup P_{h}$. Thus if $i=2$ then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in B:=\{k, l, m, n, h, f, d, g, c, b\}$.

We end this proof with the following observation:
( $\star \star$ ) if $j \leq 2$ for some $j \in\{k, l, m, h, f, g\}$ then the number of paths $P \in \mathscr{P}$ satisfying that $\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P \neq \phi$ is at most nine since $P_{j}$ has at most one parent instead of two.

Remark 3.1.4. Recall that $P_{g}$ and $P_{d}$ are the parents of $P_{f}$. If $d<g$ then $P_{d}$ is a parent of $P_{g}$; since $P_{b}$ and $P_{c}$ are the parents of $P_{g}, d \in\{b, c\}$. Recall that $P_{h}$ and $P_{n}$ are the parents of $P_{m}$. If $n<h$ then $P_{n}$ is a parent of $P_{h}$; since $P_{g}$ and $P_{f}$ are the parents of $P_{h}, n \in\{g, f\}$. Thus if $m<h, d<g$ or $n<h$ (recall observation (*)), then the number of paths $P \in \mathscr{P}$ satisfying that $\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P \neq \phi$ is at most nine, and we are done (Claim 3.1.2).

In the remainder of this proof, we assume that $h<m, g<d$ and $h<n$. We will estimate $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{j}\right|$ for every $j \in B$. Before we proceed, we provide a simple drawing to give a quick reference showing how the paths in $\mathscr{P}$ are related.

In Figure 3.1 on page 45 , we contracted each path $P_{j}, j \in B$ to a single vertex $p_{j}$. The vertex $p_{j}$ is to the left of $p_{j^{\prime}}$ if and only if $j<j^{\prime}$.

Claim 3.1.5. $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{k}\right| \leq 6$.

Proof. Follows from the restriction of $L$ on $V\left(P_{k}\right)$ and from the fact that $P_{k}$ is isometric in $G\left[P_{\geq k}\right]$.

Claim 3.1.6. $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{l}\right|,\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| \leq 10$.

Proof. We first show that $v \in O_{l, 1} \cap O_{f, 1}$ (recall the definition of $O_{i, 1}$ from Section 1.2). The paths $P_{h}$ and $P_{m}$ are the parents of $P_{l}$, and as $h<m, P_{h}$ is the strong parent of $P_{l}$. Thus $D_{l, 1}=v_{l} P_{h} v_{l}^{\prime} w_{l}^{\prime} P_{l} w_{l} v_{l}$; as $P_{h}$ and $P_{l}$ are the parents of $P_{k}, P_{k}$ is in the interior of $D_{l, 1}$, i.e., $P_{k}$ is in $O_{l, 1}$, see Figure 3.2 on page 47. Similarly, the paths $P_{g}$ and $P_{d}$ are the parents of $P_{f}$, and as $g<d, P_{g}$ is the strong parent of $P_{f}$. Thus $D_{f, 1}=v_{f} P_{g} v_{f}^{\prime} w_{f}^{\prime} P_{f} w_{f} v_{f}$. The paths $P_{g}$ and $P_{f}$ are the parents of $P_{h}$, so $P_{h}$ is in $O_{f, 1}$, as $P_{h}$ and $P_{k}$ are adjacent and $G$ is planar, $P_{k}$ is also in $O_{f, 1}$. As $v \in P_{k}$, $v \in O_{l, 1} \cap O_{f, 1}$ too.

Let $j \in\{l, f\}$, and let $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{j}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{j}}(x, y)$ is maximum. To prove the claim, it suffices to show that $\left\|x P_{j} y\right\| \leq 9$. Let $Q_{x}$ and $Q_{y}$ be paths witnessing that $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$ respectively. Then $\left\|Q_{x}\right\|,\left\|Q_{y}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{j}$. Starting from the $v$-end, let $x^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{x}$ contained in $P_{j}$, and starting from the $v$-end, let $y^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{y}$ contained in $P_{j}$.

Now the walk $W:=x^{\prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime}$ is in $P_{j} \cup O_{j, 1}$ since $v \in O_{j, 1}$, and $W \neq x^{\prime} P_{j} y^{\prime}$ as $v \in W-x^{\prime} P_{j} y^{\prime}$. From Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|x^{\prime} P_{j} y^{\prime}\right\| \leq\|W\|-1$. Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|x P_{j} y\right\| & \leq\left\|x P_{j} x^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime} P_{j} y^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime} P_{j} y\right\| \\
& \leq\left\|x P_{j} x^{\prime}\right\|+\|W\|+\left\|y^{\prime} P_{j} y\right\|-1 \\
& \leq{ }_{(1)}\left\|x Q_{x} x^{\prime}\right\|+\|W\|+\left\|y Q_{y} y^{\prime}\right\|-1 \\
& =\left\|x Q_{x} v Q_{y} y\right\|-1 \\
& \leq 9,
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 3.2. $v \in O_{h, 1}, O_{h, 1}$ is the Interior of $D_{h, 1}=v_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime} w_{h}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h} v_{h}$
where (1) follows from the fact that $P_{j}$ is isometric in $C_{j}$ and both paths $Q_{x}$ and $Q_{y}$ are in $C_{j}$.

Claim 3.1.7. $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{m}\right| \leq 9$.
Proof. Let $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{m}$. If we show that $\left\|x P_{m} y\right\| \leq 8$, we are done. Let $Q_{x}$ be a path witnessing that $x \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$, and $Q_{y}$ a path witnessing that $y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $\left\|Q_{x}\right\|,\left\|Q_{y}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{m}$. As $m<k$, any path from $v \in P_{k}$ to a vertex in $P_{m}$ must intersect with a parent of $P_{k}$, i.e., either $P_{h}$ or $P_{l}$ (Lemma 2.1.2). As $h<m, Q_{x} \cap P_{h}, Q_{y} \cap P_{h}=\phi$. So $Q_{x} \cap P_{l}, Q_{y} \cap P_{l} \neq \phi$. Starting from the $v$-end, let
$x^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{x}$ contained in $P_{l}$. Starting from the $v$-end, let $y^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{y}$ contained in $P_{l}$. Then the walk $W:=x^{\prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime}$ is in $P_{l} \cup O_{l, 1}$ as $Q_{x} \cap P_{h}, Q_{y} \cap P_{h}=\phi$ and $v \in O_{l, 1}$ (see Claim 3.1.6), and $W \neq x^{\prime} P_{l} y^{\prime}$. From Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|x^{\prime} P_{l} y^{\prime}\right\| \leq\|W\|-1$.

Starting from the $x^{\prime}$-end, let $x^{\prime \prime}$ be the first vertex in $x^{\prime} Q_{x} x$ contained in $P_{m}$. Starting from the $y^{\prime}$-end, let $y^{\prime \prime}$ be the first vertex in $y^{\prime} Q_{y} y$ contained in $P_{m}$. We show that the walk $W^{\prime}:=x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} x^{\prime} P_{l} y^{\prime} Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}$ is in $P_{m} \cup O_{m, 1}$. As $P_{h}$ is the strong parent of $P_{m}, D_{m, 1}=v_{m} P_{h} v_{m}^{\prime} w_{m}^{\prime} P_{m} w_{m} v_{m}$. As $P_{h}$ and $P_{m}$ are the parents of $P_{l}, P_{l}$ is in $O_{m, 1}$, and as $Q_{x} \cap P_{h}, Q_{y} \cap P_{h}=\phi, W^{\prime}$ is in $P_{m} \cup O_{m, 1}$.

Clearly, $W^{\prime} \neq x^{\prime \prime} P_{m} y^{\prime \prime}$. From Lemma 2.1.5,

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|x^{\prime \prime} P_{m} y^{\prime \prime}\right\| & \leq\left\|W^{\prime}\right\|-1 \\
& =\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} x^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime} P_{l} y^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime} Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|-1  \tag{3.1.1}\\
& \leq\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} x^{\prime}\right\|+\|W\|+\left\|y^{\prime} Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|-2 \\
& =\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|-2 .
\end{align*}
$$

Since $P_{m}$ is isometric in $C_{m}$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{m},\left\|x P_{m} x^{\prime \prime}\right\| \leq\left\|x Q_{x} x^{\prime \prime}\right\|$ and $\left\|y^{\prime \prime} P_{m} y\right\| \leq$ $\left\|y^{\prime \prime} Q_{y} y\right\|$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|x P_{m} y\right\| & \leq\left\|x P_{m} x^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime \prime} P_{m} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime \prime} P_{m} y\right\| \\
& \leq\left\|x Q_{x} x^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime \prime} Q_{y} y\right\|-2 \\
& =\left\|x Q_{x} v Q_{y} y\right\|-2 \\
& \leq 8
\end{aligned}
$$

Claim 3.1.8. $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{n}\right| \leq 9$.

Proof. The proof is similar to the proof of Claim 3.1.7. Let $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{n}$. Let $Q_{x}$ be a path witnessing that $x \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$, and $Q_{y}$ a path witnessing that $y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then
$\left\|Q_{x}\right\|,\left\|Q_{y}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{n}$. Any path from a vertex in $P_{k}$ to a vertex in $P_{n}$ intersects with either $P_{h}$ or $P_{l}$. As $h<n, Q_{x} \cap P_{h}, Q_{y} \cap P_{h}=\phi$, so $Q_{x} \cap P_{l}, Q_{y} \cap P_{l} \neq \phi$. Starting from the $v$-end, let $x^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{x}$ contained in $P_{l}$. Starting from the $v$-end, let $y^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{y}$ contained in $P_{l}$. Let $W:=x^{\prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime}$. Recall that $D_{l, 1}=v_{l} P_{h} v_{l}^{\prime} w_{l}^{\prime} P_{l} w_{l} v_{l}$ and $v \in O_{l, 1}$ (see Claim 3.1.6), and as $Q_{x} \cap P_{h}, Q_{y} \cap P_{h}=\phi$, $W$ is a walk in $P_{l} \cup O_{l, 1}$. Clearly, $W \neq x^{\prime} P_{l} y^{\prime}$, so from Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|x^{\prime} P_{l y} y^{\prime}\right\| \leq\|W\|-1$.

Now both $x^{\prime} Q_{x} x$ and $y^{\prime} Q_{y} y$ are paths between a vertex in $P_{l}$ and a vertex in $P_{n}$. Since $n<l\left(P_{n}\right.$ is a parent of $P_{m}$, and $P_{m}$ is a parent of $\left.P_{l}\right)$, both $x^{\prime} Q_{x} x$ and $y^{\prime} Q_{y} y$ each intersect with a parent of $P_{l}$, i.e., either $P_{h}$ or $P_{m}$. We have just seen that $Q_{x} \cap P_{h}, Q_{y} \cap P_{h}=\phi$, so $x^{\prime} Q_{x} x \cap P_{m}, y^{\prime} Q_{y} y \cap P_{m} \neq \phi$. Starting from the $x^{\prime}$-end, let $x^{\prime \prime}$ be the first vertex in $x^{\prime} Q_{x} x$ that is in $P_{m}$. Starting from the $y^{\prime}$-end, let $y^{\prime \prime}$ be the first vertex in $y^{\prime} Q_{y} y$ that is in $P_{m}$. We show that the walk $W^{\prime}:=x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} x^{\prime} P_{l} y^{\prime} Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}$ is in $P_{m} \cup O_{m, 1}$. As $P_{h}$ is the strong parent of $P_{m}$, then $D_{m, 1}=v_{m} P_{h} v_{m}^{\prime} w_{m}^{\prime} P_{m} w_{m} v_{m}$. The parents of $P_{l}$ are $P_{h}$ and $P_{m}$, so $P_{l}$ is in $O_{m, 1}$. As $Q_{x} \cap P_{h}, Q_{y} \cap P_{h}=\phi, W^{\prime}$ is in $P_{m} \cup O_{m, 1}$. From Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|x^{\prime \prime} P_{m} y^{\prime \prime}\right\| \leq\left\|W^{\prime}\right\|-1$. As in Inequality (3.1.1), $\left\|x^{\prime \prime} P_{m} y^{\prime \prime}\right\| \leq\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|-2$. Both $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{n}$, and as $n<m, C_{m} \subset C_{n}$ (Lemma 2.1.4). So $x Q_{x} x^{\prime \prime} P_{m} y^{\prime \prime} Q_{y} y$ is a walk in $C_{n}$. As $x P_{n} y$ is isometric in $C_{n}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|x P_{n} y\right\| & \leq\left\|x Q_{x} x^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime \prime} P_{m} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime \prime} Q_{y} y\right\| \\
& \leq\left\|x Q_{x} x^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime \prime} Q_{y} y\right\|-2 \\
& =\left\|x Q_{x} v Q_{y} y\right\|-2 \\
& \leq 8 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Claim 3.1.9. Let $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{d}$ and assume that $Q_{u}:=u_{0} u_{1} u_{2} \ldots u_{q}$ is a path witnessing that $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$ where $u_{0}=u$ and $u_{q}=v$. Then $u_{1} \in P_{f}$ and $u_{2} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$.

Proof. Let $i=\max \left\{j \in[q-1] \cup\{0\}: u_{j}<_{L} v\right\}$. We recall some facts from the proof
of Claim 3.1.3: If $i=0$, then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in\{k, l, h\}$, if $i=1$ then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in A$, if $i=2$ and $u_{2}<u_{1}$ then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in A$, and if $i=2$ and $u_{1}<u_{2}$ then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in B$. Thus $i=2$ and $u_{1}<u_{2}$ as $u \in P_{d}$. Also from the proof of Claim 3.1.3, $u_{1} \in P_{f}$. From Lemma 2.1.2, the path $u_{1} Q_{u} v$ intersects with either $v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$ or $P_{l}$. So either $u_{2} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$ or $u_{2} \in P_{l}$. As $P_{f}$ and $P_{l}$ are not adjacent, $u_{2} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$.

Claim 3.1.10. $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{d}\right| \leq 10$.
Proof. Let $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{d}$. Let $Q_{x}$ be a path witnessing that $x \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$, and let $Q_{y}$ be a path witnessing that $y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $\left\|Q_{x}\right\|,\left\|Q_{y}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{d}$. Observe also that $Q_{x}$ and $Q_{y}$ each have to be of length at least three. From Claim 3.1.9, $Q_{x}=x x^{\prime} x^{\prime \prime} \ldots v, Q_{y}=y y^{\prime} y^{\prime \prime} \ldots v$ where $x^{\prime}, y^{\prime} \in P_{f}$ and $x^{\prime \prime}, y^{\prime \prime} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$. We show that the walk $W:=x^{\prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime}$ is in $P_{f} \cup O_{f, 1}$. As $P_{g}$ is the strong parent of $P_{f}, D_{f, 1}=v_{f} P_{g} v_{f}^{\prime} w_{f}^{\prime} P_{f} w_{f} v_{f}$. As $P_{g}$ and $P_{f}$ are the parents of $P_{h}, C_{h} \subseteq O_{f, 1}$. From Lemma 3.0.2, $x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} v-x^{\prime \prime}, y^{\prime \prime} Q_{y} v-y^{\prime \prime} \subseteq C_{k}$, and from Lemma 2.1.4, $C_{k} \subset C_{h}$. So $x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime} \subseteq C_{h}$, and as $x^{\prime}, y^{\prime} \in P_{f}, W \subseteq P_{f} \cup O_{f, 1}$. From Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|x^{\prime} P_{f} y^{\prime}\right\| \leq\|W\|-1$.

Now the walk $x x^{\prime} P_{f} y^{\prime} y$ is in $C_{d}$ since $x, y \in P_{d}$ and $x^{\prime} P_{f} y^{\prime} \subseteq C_{f} \subset C_{d}$ (Lemma 2.1.4). As $x P_{d} y$ is an isometric path in $C_{d}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|x P_{d} y\right\| & \leq\left\|x x^{\prime} P_{f} y^{\prime} y\right\| \\
& =\left\|x x^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime} P_{f} y^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime} y\right\| \\
& \leq\left\|x x^{\prime}\right\|+\|W\|+\left\|y^{\prime} y\right\|-1 \\
& \leq\left\|x Q_{x} v Q_{y} y\right\|-1 \\
& \leq 9 .
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 3.3. $v \in O_{h, 2}, O_{h, 2}$ is the Interior of $D_{h, 2}=z_{h} P_{f} z_{h}^{\prime} w_{h}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h} z_{h}$

Recall that $P_{b}$ is the strong parent of $P_{g}$, and $P_{c}$ is the weak parent. Then $D_{g, 1}=v_{g} P_{b} v_{g}^{\prime} w_{g}^{\prime} P_{g} w_{g} v_{g}$ and $D_{g, 2}=z_{g} P_{c} z_{g}^{\prime} w_{g}^{\prime} P_{g} w_{g} z_{g}$. As $P_{g}$ is a parent of $P_{h}$, and $P_{h}$ is a parent of $P_{k}, C_{k} \subset C_{h} \subset C_{g}$ (Lemma 2.1.4). So $C_{k}$ (and then $v$ ) is either in $O_{g, 1}$ or $O_{g, 2}$. In both figures, Figure 3.2 on page 47 and Figure 3.3 on page $51, v \subseteq O_{g, 1}$. Claim 3.1.11. Assume that $v \in O_{g, 1}$. Let $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{b}$ and assume that $Q_{u}:=$ $u_{0} u_{1} \ldots u_{q}$ is a path witnessing that $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$ where $u_{0}=u$ and $u_{q}=v$. Then $u_{1} \in\left\{v_{h}, v_{h}^{\prime}\right\}$ and $u_{2} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$.

Proof. Let $i=\max \left\{j \in[q-1] \cup\{0\}: u_{j}<_{L} v\right\}$. From the proof of Claim 3.1.3: If


Figure 3.4. The Brown Cycle is $C^{\prime}$ in Claim 3.1.11 and the Cyan Cycle is $C^{\prime \prime}$ in Claim 3.1.13
$i=0$, then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in\{k, l, h\}$, if $i=1$ then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in A$, if $i=2$ and $u_{2}<u_{1}$ then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in A$, and if $i=2$ and $u_{1}<u_{2}$ then $u \in P_{j}$ for some $j \in B$. Thus $i=2, u_{1}<u_{2}$ and $u_{1} \in P_{g}$. From Lemma 2.1.2, $u_{1} Q_{u} v$ intersects with either $v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$ or $P_{l}$. So either $u_{2} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$ or $u_{2} \in P_{l}$. Since $P_{g}$ and $P_{l}$ are not a adjacent, $u_{2} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$.

It is left to show that $u_{1} \in\left\{v_{h}, v_{h}^{\prime}\right\}$. As $u_{2} \in P_{h}, u_{2}$ is in the interior of $D_{h}$, while $P_{g}-v_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}$ is in the exterior of $D_{h}$. As $u_{1} \in N\left(u_{2}\right) \cap P_{g}, u_{1} \in v_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}$. Let the cycle $C^{\prime}:=D_{h, 1} \cup D_{g, 2}-\imath_{h}^{\circ} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}$, see Figure 3.4 on page 52; we assumed in the figure that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{g}}\left(v_{h}, w_{g}\right) \leq \operatorname{dist}_{P_{g}}\left(v_{h}^{\prime}, w_{g}\right)$. The inner vertices of $v_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}$ are in the interior of $C^{\prime}$,
while $u$ is in the exterior $\left(u \in P_{b}\right)$. As $u$ and $u_{1}$ are neighbors, $u_{1} \notin v_{h}^{\circ} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}$, and therefore $u_{1} \in\left\{v_{h}, v_{h}^{\prime}\right\}$.

Claim 3.1.12. Assume that $v \in O_{g, 2}$. Let $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{c}$ and assume that $Q_{u}:=$ $u_{0} u_{1} \ldots u_{q}$ is a path witnessing that $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$ where $u_{0}=u$ and $u_{q}=v$. Then $u_{1} \in\left\{v_{h}, v_{h}^{\prime}\right\}$ and $u_{2} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$.

Proof. Replace the cycle $D_{h, 1} \cup D_{g, 2}-\vartheta_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\circ}$ in the proof of Claim 3.1.11 with the cycle $D_{h, 1} \cup D_{g, 1}-\stackrel{\circ}{h}^{\circ} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}$.

Claim 3.1.13. Assume that $v \in O_{g, 1}$. If $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{b}\right| \geq 4$ then $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{g}\right| \leq 10$.

Proof. Let $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{b}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{b}}(x, y)$ is maximum. Let $Q_{x}$ be a path witnessing that $x \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$, and $Q_{y}$ a path witnessing that $y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $\left\|Q_{x}\right\|,\left\|Q_{y}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{b}$. Observe that both $Q_{x}$ and $Q_{y}$ each have to be of length at least three. From Claim 3.1.11, $Q_{x}=x x^{\prime} x^{\prime \prime} \ldots v$ and $Q_{y}=y y^{\prime} y^{\prime \prime} \ldots v$ where $x^{\prime}, y^{\prime} \in\left\{v_{h}, v_{h}^{\prime}\right\}$ and $x^{\prime \prime}, y^{\prime \prime} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$. Assume that $x^{\prime}=y^{\prime}$. The path $P_{b}$ is isometric in $C_{b}$ and $x x^{\prime} y$ is a path in $C_{b}$, so $\left\|x P_{b} y\right\| \leq\left\|x x^{\prime} y\right\| \leq 2$, which is a contradiction to the assumption $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{b}\right| \geq 4$. Thus $x^{\prime} \neq y^{\prime}$. We may assume that $x^{\prime}=v_{h}$, $y^{\prime}=v_{h}^{\prime}$ and $v_{h}<_{L} v_{h}^{\prime}$. We may also assume that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{g}}\left(v_{h}, w_{g}\right)<\operatorname{dist}_{P_{g}}\left(v_{h}^{\prime}, w_{g}\right)$, see Figure 3.4 on page 52. As $v_{h}<_{L} v_{h}^{\prime}, V\left(v_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}\right)<_{L} V\left(v_{h}^{\prime} P_{g} w_{g}^{\prime}-v_{h}^{\prime}\right)$. To finish the proof, it suffices to show that $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap w_{g} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}\right| \leq 10$ and $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(v_{h}^{\prime} P_{g} w_{g}^{\prime}-v_{h}^{\prime}\right)\right|=0$.

Let $z \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap w_{g} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}$. Let $Q_{z}$ be a path witnessing that $z \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $\left\|Q_{z}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{z} \subseteq C_{g}$. From Lemma 3.0.2, $v Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}-y^{\prime \prime} \subseteq C_{k}$, and as $g<h<k$, $C_{k} \subset C_{h} \subset C_{g}$. Therefore the walk $z Q_{z} v Q_{y} v_{h}^{\prime}$ is in $C_{g}$ and of length at most nine. As $P_{g}$ is isometric in $C_{g},\left\|z P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}\right\| \leq\left\|z Q_{z} v Q_{y} v_{h}^{\prime}\right\| \leq 9$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap w_{g} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}\right| \leq 10$.

Assume that $\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(v_{h}^{\prime} P_{g} w_{g}^{\prime}-v_{h}^{\prime}\right) \neq \phi$. Let $w \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(v_{h}^{\prime} P_{g} w_{g}^{\prime}-v_{h}^{\prime}\right)$ and assume that $Q_{w}$ is a path witnessing $w \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. The vertex $v$ is in the interior of the
cycle $C^{\prime \prime}:=x P_{b} y v_{h}^{\prime} P_{g} v_{h} x$, while $w$ is in the exterior, see Figure 3.4 on page 52. As $G$ is a planar graph, $Q_{w}$ intersects with $C^{\prime \prime}$. Note that $b<g$, so $Q_{w}$ intersects with $v_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}$. But $V\left(v_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime}\right)<_{L} V\left(v_{h}^{\prime} P_{g} w_{g}^{\prime}-v_{h}^{\prime}\right)$, a contradiction to the definition of $\operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(v_{h}^{\prime} P_{g} w_{g}^{\prime}-v_{h}^{\prime}\right)\right|=0$.

Claim 3.1.14. Assume that $v \in O_{g, 2}$. If $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{c}\right| \geq 4$ then $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{g}\right| \leq 10$.

Proof. Replace each $b$ by $c$, and use Claim 3.1.12 instead of Claim 3.1.11 in the proof of Claim 3.1.13.

Claim 3.1.15. $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(P_{g} \cup P_{c} \cup P_{b}\right)\right| \leq 32$.

Proof. Assume that $v \in O_{g, 1}$. From Claim 3.1.13, $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(P_{g} \cup P_{b}\right)\right| \leq 21$. As $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{c}\right| \leq 11,\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(P_{g} \cup P_{c} \cup P_{b}\right)\right| \leq 32$. Assume that $v \in O_{g, 2}$. From Claim 3.1.14, $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(P_{g} \cup P_{c}\right)\right| \leq 21$. As $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{b}\right| \leq 11$, the statement holds.

Recall that $v \in C_{k} \subset C_{h}$, so $v \in O_{h, 1}$ or $v \in O_{h, 2}$, see the examples in Figure 3.2 on page 47 and Figure 3.3 on page 51.

Claim 3.1.16. If $v \in O_{h, 1}$ then $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 10$.

Proof. Let $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{h}$. Let $Q_{x}$ be a path witnessing that $x \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$, and let $Q_{y}$ be a path witnessing that $y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $\left\|Q_{x}\right\|,\left\|Q_{y}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{h}$. Starting from the $v$-end, let $x^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{x}$ that is also in $P_{h}$. Starting from the $v$-end, let $y^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{y}$ that is also in $P_{h}$. Recall that $D_{h, 1}=v_{h} P_{g} v_{h}^{\prime} w_{h}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h} v_{h}$, so $V\left(D_{h, 1}\right) \subseteq P_{g} \cup P_{h}$. As $g<h, Q_{x} \cap P_{g}, Q_{y} \cap P_{g}=\phi$. Thus the walk $W:=x^{\prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime}$ is in $P_{h} \cup O_{h, 1}$ as $v \in O_{h, 1}$. From Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|x^{\prime} P_{h} y^{\prime}\right\| \leq\|W\|-1$.

The path $x P_{h} y$ is isometric in $C_{h}$ and $W^{\prime}:=x Q_{x} x^{\prime} P_{h} y^{\prime} Q_{y} y$ is a walk in $C_{h}$ $\left(Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{h}\right)$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|x P_{h} y\right\| & \leq\left\|W^{\prime}\right\| \\
& =\left\|x Q_{x} x^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime} P_{h} y^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime} Q_{y} y\right\| \\
& \leq\left\|x Q_{x} x^{\prime}\right\|+\|W\|+\left\|y^{\prime} Q_{y} y\right\|-1 \\
& \leq\left\|x Q_{x} v Q_{y} y\right\|-1 \\
& \leq 9 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Claim 3.1.17. If $v \in O_{h, 1}$ then $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{f}\right| \leq 9$.
Proof. Let $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{f}$, let $Q_{x}$ be a path witnessing that $x \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$, and let $Q_{y}$ be a path witnessing that $y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $\left\|Q_{x}\right\|,\left\|Q_{y}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{f}$. Note that $v$ is in the interior of $D_{h, 1}$ (assumption) while $P_{f}$ is in the exterior of $D_{h, 1}$, so $Q_{x}$ and $Q_{y}$ each intersect with $D_{h, 1}$. Recall that $V\left(D_{h, 1}\right) \subseteq P_{g} \cup P_{h}$; as $g<f$, $Q_{x} \cap P_{g}, Q_{y} \cap P_{g}=\phi$, so $Q_{x} \cap P_{h}, Q_{y} \cap P_{h} \neq \phi$.

Starting from the $v$-end, let $x^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{x}$ that is also in $P_{h}$. Starting from the $v$-end, let $y^{\prime}$ be the first vertex in $Q_{y}$ that is also in $P_{h}$. Then the walk $W:=x^{\prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime}$ is in $P_{h} \cup O_{h, 1}$ as $v \in O_{h, 1}$ and $Q_{x} \cap P_{g}, Q_{y} \cap P_{g}=\phi$. From Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|x^{\prime} P_{h} y^{\prime}\right\| \leq\|W\|-1$. Starting from the $x^{\prime}$-end, let $x^{\prime \prime}$ be the first vertex in $x^{\prime} Q_{x} x$ that is also in $P_{f}$. Staring from the $y^{\prime}$-end, let $y^{\prime \prime}$ be the first vertex in $y^{\prime} Q_{y} y$ that is also in $P_{f}$. We show that the walk $W^{\prime}:=x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} x^{\prime} P_{h} y^{\prime} Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}$ is in $P_{f} \cup O_{f, 1}$. Since $P_{g}$ is the strong parent of $P_{f}, D_{f, 1}=v_{f} P_{g} v_{f}^{\prime} w_{f}^{\prime} P_{f} w_{f} v_{f}$. As $P_{g}$ and $P_{f}$ are the parents of $P_{h}, P_{h}$ is in the interior of $D_{f, 1}$. To see that also $x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} x^{\prime}, y^{\prime} Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime} \subseteq P_{f} \cup O_{f, 1}$, observe that $V\left(D_{f, 1}\right) \subseteq P_{g} \cup P_{f}$ and recall that $Q_{x} \cap P_{g}, Q_{y} \cap P_{g}=\phi$. Thus $W^{\prime} \subseteq P_{f} \cup O_{f, 1}$.

From Lemma 2.1.5,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|x^{\prime \prime} P_{f} y^{\prime \prime}\right\| & \leq\left\|W^{\prime}\right\|-1 \\
& =\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} x^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime} P_{h} y^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime} Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|-1 \\
& \leq\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} x^{\prime}\right\|+\|W\|+\left\|y^{\prime} Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|-2 \\
& =\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|-2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

The path $x P_{f} y$ is isometric in $C_{f}$ and the walk $W^{\prime \prime}:=x Q_{x} x^{\prime \prime} P_{f} y^{\prime \prime} Q_{y} y$ is clearly in $C_{f}$. Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|x P_{f} y\right\| & \leq\left\|W^{\prime \prime}\right\| \\
& =\left\|x Q_{x} x^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime \prime} P_{f} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime \prime} Q_{y} y\right\| \\
& \leq\left\|x Q_{x} x^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime \prime} Q_{y} y\right\|-2 \\
& =\left\|x Q_{x} v Q_{y} y\right\|-2 \\
& \leq 8 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Claim 3.1.18. If $v \in O_{h, 1}$ then $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{d}\right| \leq 9$.
Proof. Let $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{d}$, let $Q_{x}$ be a path witnessing that $x \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$, and $Q_{y}$ a path witnessing that $y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $\left\|Q_{x}\right\|,\left\|Q_{y}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{d}$. From Claim 3.1.9, $Q_{x}=x x^{\prime} x^{\prime \prime} \ldots v, Q_{y}=y y^{\prime} y^{\prime \prime} \ldots v$ where $x^{\prime}, y^{\prime} \in P_{f}$ and $x^{\prime \prime}, y^{\prime \prime} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$. We show that the walk $W:=x^{\prime \prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime \prime}$ is in $P_{h} \cup O_{h, 1}$. From Lemma 3.0.2, $W-\left\{x^{\prime \prime}, y^{\prime \prime}\right\} \subseteq C_{k}$. As $C_{k} \subseteq C_{h}$, either $C_{k} \subseteq O_{h, 1}$ or $C_{k} \subseteq O_{h, 2}$. From assumption, $v \in O_{h, 1}$, so $C_{k} \subseteq O_{h, 1}$. Thus $W \subseteq P_{h} \cup O_{h, 1}$. From Lemma 2.1.5, $\left\|x^{\prime \prime} P_{h} y^{\prime \prime}\right\| \leq\|W\|-1$.

Recall that $D_{f, 1}=v_{f} P_{g} v_{f}^{\prime} w_{f}^{\prime} P_{f} w_{f} v_{f}$. As $P_{g}$ and $P_{f}$ are the parents of $P_{h}, P_{h}$ is in
the interior of $D_{f, 1}$. Thus the walk $W^{\prime}:=x^{\prime} x^{\prime \prime} P_{h} y^{\prime \prime} y^{\prime} \subseteq P_{f} \cup O_{f, 1}$. From Lemma 2.1.5,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|x^{\prime} P_{f} y^{\prime}\right\| & \leq\left\|W^{\prime}\right\|-1 \\
& =\left\|x^{\prime} x^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime \prime} P_{h} y^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime \prime} y^{\prime}\right\|-1 \\
& \leq\left\|x^{\prime} x^{\prime \prime}\right\|+\|W\|+\left\|y^{\prime \prime} y^{\prime}\right\|-2 \\
& =\left\|x^{\prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime}\right\|-2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Now $W^{\prime \prime}:=x x^{\prime} P_{f} y^{\prime} y$ is a walk in $C_{d}$ as $x, y \in P_{d}$ and $x^{\prime} P_{f} y^{\prime} \subseteq C_{f} \subset C_{d}$ (Lemma 2.1.4). Since $x P_{d} y$ is isometric in $C_{d}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|x P_{d} y\right\| & \leq\left\|W^{\prime \prime}\right\| \\
& =\left\|x x^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime} P_{f} y^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime} y\right\| \\
& \leq\left\|x x^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|x^{\prime} Q_{x} v Q_{y} y^{\prime}\right\|+\left\|y^{\prime} y\right\|-2 \\
& =\left\|x Q_{x} v Q_{y} y\right\|-2 \\
& \leq 8 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Claim 3.1.19. Assume that $v \in O_{h, 2}$. Let $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{d}$ and assume that $Q_{u}:=$ $u_{0} u_{1} u_{2} \ldots u_{q}$ is a path witnessing that $u \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$ where $u_{0}=u$ and $u_{q}=v$. Then $u_{2} \in\left\{v_{k}, v_{k}^{\prime}\right\}$.

Proof. From Claim 3.1.9, $u_{1} \in P_{f}$ and $u_{2} \in v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$. We just need to show that $u_{2} \notin \stackrel{\circ}{k}^{\circ} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$. If $\circ_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}=\phi$, we are done, so assume that $\stackrel{\circ}{k}^{\circ} P_{h} v_{k}^{\circ} \neq \phi$. Clearly, $v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$ is in the interior of the cycle $C^{\prime}:=D_{k, 1} \cup D_{h, 1}-\vartheta_{k}^{\circ} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$, see Figure 3.5 on page 58 . Both the interior of $D_{k, 1}$ and the interior of $D_{h, 1}$ are in $C_{h}$, and as $f<h$, Lemma 2.1.1 tells us that $P_{f} \cap C_{h}=\phi$. As $P_{f} \cap D_{k, 1}, P_{f} \cap D_{h, 1}=\phi, P_{f}$ (and then $u_{1}$ ) is in the exterior of $C^{\prime}$. As $u_{2}$ is a neighbor of $u_{1} \in P_{f}, u_{2} \notin \vartheta_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\circ}$.

Claim 3.1.20. Assume that $v \in O_{h, 2}$. If $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{d}\right| \geq 6$ then $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{h}\right| \leq 9$.


Figure 3.5. The Cyan Cycle is $C^{\prime}$ in Claim 3.1.19 and the Brown Cycle is $C^{\prime \prime}$ in Claim 3.1.20

Proof. Let $x, y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{d}$ such that $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{d}}(x, y)$ is maximum. Let $Q_{x}$ be a path witnessing that $x \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$, and $Q_{y}$ a path witnessing that $y \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $\left\|Q_{x}\right\|,\left\|Q_{y}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{x}, Q_{y} \subseteq C_{d}$. Observe that $Q_{x}$ and $Q_{y}$ each have to be of length at least three. From Claim 3.1.19, $Q_{x}=x x^{\prime} x^{\prime \prime} \ldots v, Q_{y}=y y^{\prime} y^{\prime \prime} \ldots v$ where $x^{\prime}, y^{\prime} \in P_{f}, x^{\prime \prime}, y^{\prime \prime} \in\left\{v_{k}, v_{k}^{\prime}\right\}$. Assume that $x^{\prime \prime}=y^{\prime \prime}$. Then $x x^{\prime} x^{\prime \prime} y^{\prime} y$ is a walk of length four in $C_{d}$. As $x P_{d} y$ is an isometric path in $C_{d},\left\|x P_{d} y\right\| \leq 4$, and so $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{d}\right| \leq 5$, which contradicts the assumption. Thus $x^{\prime \prime} \neq y^{\prime \prime}$. We may assume without loss of generality that $x^{\prime \prime}=v_{k}$ and $y^{\prime \prime}=v_{k}^{\prime}$. We also may assume that $v_{k}<_{L} v_{k}^{\prime}$ and $\operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(v_{k}, w_{h}\right) \leq \operatorname{dist}_{P_{h}}\left(v_{k}^{\prime}, w_{h}\right)$. From the definition of $L, V\left(v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}\right)<_{L} V\left(v_{k}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h}^{\prime}-v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$. We finish the proof by showing that $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap w_{h} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}\right| \leq 9$ and $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(v_{k}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h}^{\prime}-v_{k}^{\prime}\right)\right|=0$.

Let $z \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap w_{h} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$, and let $Q_{z}$ be a path witnessing that $z \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. Then $\left\|Q_{z}\right\| \leq 5$ and $Q_{z} \subseteq C_{h}$. The path $v_{k}^{\prime} Q_{y} v-v_{k}^{\prime}$ is in $C_{k}$ (Lemma 3.0.2), as $C_{k} \subset C_{h}$ and

| Dc $P_{i}:=\left\|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{i}\right\|$ | $v \in O_{h, 1}$ | $v \in O_{h, 2}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Dc $P_{k}$ | 6 | 6 |
| Dc $P_{l}$ | 10 | 10 |
| Dc $P_{m}$ | 9 | 9 |
| Dc $P_{n}$ | 9 | 9 |
| Dc $P_{h}$ | 10 | 11 |
| Dc $P_{f}$ | 9 | 10 |
| Dc $P_{d}$ | 9 | 10 |


|  | $v \in O_{h, 1}$ | $v \in O_{h, 2}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\operatorname{Dc} P_{d}+\operatorname{Dc} P_{h}$ | 19 | 19 |
| Dc $P_{g}+\operatorname{Dc} P_{c}+\operatorname{Dc} P_{b}$ | 32 | 32 |

Table 1. Upper Bounds for $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap P_{i}\right|$
$v_{k}^{\prime} \in P_{h} \subseteq C_{h}, v_{k}^{\prime} Q_{y} v \subseteq C_{h}$. From the definition of $\operatorname{Dc}(v),\left\|v_{k}^{\prime} Q_{y} v\right\| \leq 3$, so $z Q_{z} v Q_{y} v_{k}^{\prime}$ is a walk of length at most eight between $z$ and $v_{k}^{\prime}$ in $C_{h}$, and $z P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$ is an isometric path in $C_{h}$. Thus $\left\|z P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}\right\| \leq\left\|z Q_{z} v Q_{y} v_{k}^{\prime}\right\| \leq 8$, so $\left|\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap w_{h} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}\right| \leq 9$.

Assume that $\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(v_{k}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h}^{\prime}-v_{k}^{\prime}\right) \neq \phi$. Let $w \in \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(v_{k}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h}^{\prime}-v_{k}^{\prime}\right)$ and assume that $Q_{w}$ is a path witnessing that $w \in \operatorname{Dc}(v)$. From Lemma 2.1.2, $Q_{w}$ intersects with either $v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$ or $z_{k} P_{l} z_{k}^{\prime}$. As $V\left(v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}\right)<_{L} V\left(v_{k}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h}^{\prime}-v_{k}^{\prime}\right), Q_{w} \cap v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}=\phi$, so $Q_{w} \cap z_{k} P_{l} z_{k}^{\prime} \neq \phi$. Let the cycle $C^{\prime \prime}:=v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime} y^{\prime} P_{f} x^{\prime} v_{k}$, see Figure 3.5 on page 58 . Clearly, $w$ is in the exterior of $C^{\prime \prime}$, we show that $z_{k} P_{l} z_{k}^{\prime}$ is in the interior of $C^{\prime \prime}$. The path $z_{k} P_{l} z_{k}^{\prime}$ is adjacent to $P_{k}$, and $P_{k}$ is in $O_{h, 2}$ (assumption); as $G$ is planar, $z_{k} P_{l} z_{k}^{\prime}$ is in $O_{h, 2}$ too. The cycle $D_{h, 2}$ and the two edges $v_{k} x^{\prime}, v_{k}^{\prime} y^{\prime}$ make up three cycles, one of them is $C^{\prime \prime}$. Observe that $C^{\prime \prime}$ is the only cycle among those three that contains $\left\{v_{k}, v_{k}^{\prime}\right\}$. As $z_{k} P_{l} z_{k}^{\prime}$ is adjacent to $v_{k}$ and $v_{k}^{\prime}, z_{k} P_{l} z_{k}^{\prime}$ is in the interior of $C^{\prime \prime}$. Thus $Q_{w}$ intersects with $C^{\prime \prime}$. As $V\left(C^{\prime \prime}\right) \subseteq P_{f} \cup v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}$ and $Q_{w} \cap v_{k} P_{h} v_{k}^{\prime}=\phi, Q_{w} \cap P_{f} \neq \phi$, but this is not possible since $V\left(P_{f}\right)<_{L} V\left(P_{h}\right)$. Thus $\operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap\left(v_{k}^{\prime} P_{h} w_{h}^{\prime}-v_{k}^{\prime}\right)=\phi$.

We sum up Claims 3.1.5-3.1.20 in Table 1 on page 59. As $\operatorname{dc}(v)=\sum_{j \in B} \mid \operatorname{Dc}(v) \cap$ $P_{j} \mid \leq 95$, Theorem 3.1.1 holds.

### 3.2 Lower Bound

An example of a planar graph $G$ with $\chi\left(G^{[43]}\right)=6$ is given in Exercise 11.4 [31]. Later, Van den Heuvel et al. [14] gave an example of an outerplanar graph $G^{\prime}$ with $\chi\left(G^{\prime[43]}\right)=5$ and a planar graph $G$ with $\chi\left(G^{[43]}\right)=7$. Here we give an outerplanar graph $G^{\prime}$ with $\chi\left(G^{\prime[43]}\right) \geq 6$, and a planar graph $G$ with $\chi\left(G^{\prime[43]}\right) \geq 9$.

## Theorem 3.2.1.

1. There exists an outerplanar $G$ such that $\chi\left(G^{[43]}\right) \geq 6$.
2. There exists a planar graph $G$ such that $\chi\left(G^{[\mathrm{L} 3]}\right) \geq 9$.

Proof. (a) Draw a path $P$ of length six, say $P=w_{1} \ldots w_{7}$. Add a new vertex $z$, then for every $i \in\{1, \ldots, 7\}$, add an edge between $z$ and $w_{i}$. For every $i \in\{1, \ldots, 6\}$, add a new vertex $z_{i}$ such that $z_{i}$ is a neighbor for $w_{i}$ and $w_{i+1}$. For every $w_{i}$, add a new neighbor $y_{i}$ where $i \in\{1, \ldots, 7\}$, see Figure 3.7 on page 62 . Let $F$ be the graph shown in Figure 3.6 on page 61. We call the vertex $w$ the center of $F$. We finish constructing $G$ by making each $w_{i}$ a center of a copy $F_{i}$ of $F$ where $i \in\{1, \ldots, 7\}$. Let $x_{1}^{i}, x_{2}^{i}, x_{3}^{i}, x_{4}^{i}$ and $x_{5}^{i}$ be the vertices in $F_{i}$ corresponding respectively to the vertices $x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}, x_{4}$ and $x_{5}$ in $F$.

In the graph $G^{[63]}$ we have the odd cycle $C_{i}:=x_{1}^{i} x_{3}^{i} x_{5}^{i} x_{4}^{i} x_{2}^{i} x_{1}^{i}$ for each $i \in\{1, \ldots, 7\}$. So the vertices of $C_{i}$ received at least three different colors. Moreover for each $i \in\{2,3, \ldots, 6\}$, the vertices $z_{i-1}, z_{i}, y_{i}$ and $z$ are neighbors for each vertex of $C_{i}$ in $G^{[43]}$. So we cannot use a color appearing in $V\left(C_{i}\right)$ to color any vertex in $\left\{z_{i-1}, z_{i}, y_{i}, z\right\}$. Similarly, we cannot use a color appearing in $V\left(C_{1}\right)$ (or in $V\left(C_{7}\right)$ ) to color a vertex in $\left\{y_{1}, z_{1}, z\right\}$ (or in $\left\{z_{6}, y_{7}, z\right\}$ ). Assume without loss of generality that the color given to $y_{4}$ is the color 1 . Then we have two cases.


Figure 3.6. The Graph $F$

Case 1: $z_{4}$ is colored with color 1 .
Since both $y_{5}$ and $z_{5}$ are at distance 3 from $y_{4}$, neither $y_{5}$ nor $z_{5}$ is colored with color 1. Assume without loss of generality $y_{5}$ is colored with color 2 . If $z_{5}$ is colored with a color different than color 2 then the set $\left\{z_{4}, y_{5}, z_{5}\right\}$ received 3 different colors and we are done since there are six colors appeared in $V\left(C_{5}\right) \cup\left\{z_{4}, y_{5}, z_{5}\right\}$. So assume $z_{5}$ is colored with 2 . Since $y_{6}$ and $z_{6}$ are at distance 3 from both $z_{4}$ and $y_{5}$, none of them can be colored with 1 or 2 . Say $y_{6}$ is colored with color 3 . If $z_{6}$ is colored with a color different than 3 then the set $\left\{z_{5}, y_{6}, z_{6}\right\}$ received 3 colors and we are done. So assume $z_{6}$ is colored with 3 . Since $y_{7}$ is at distance 3 from both $z_{5}$ and $y_{6}$, it cannot be colored with 2 or 3 . Thus $y_{7}$ has to be colored with either 1 or a new color, say 4 . If $z$ is colored with a color different than 2 and 3 then the set $\left\{z, z_{5}, y_{6}\right\}$ received 3 different colors and we are done. If $z$ is colored with 2 then the set $\left\{z, z_{6}, y_{7}\right\}$ received 3 different colors. Similarly, if $z$ is colored with 3 then the set $\left\{z, z_{4}, y_{5}\right\}$ received 3 different colors.

Case 2: $z_{4}$ is not colored with 1 , say color 2.
If $z_{3}$ is colored with a color different than 1 and 2 then $\left\{z_{3}, y_{4}, z_{4}\right\}$ received 3 colors.


Figure 3.7. The Outerplanar Graph $G$

If $z_{3}$ is colored with 1 , we have a case similar to Case 1 since G has a vertical line of symmetry and $z_{3}$ is facing $z_{4}$. So assume $z_{3}$ is colored with 2 . Since both $z_{2}$ and $y_{3}$ are at distance 3 from both $y_{4}$ and $z_{4}$, they cannot be colored with 1 or 2 . If $z_{2}$ and $y_{3}$ received different colors then $\left\{z_{2}, y_{3}, z_{3}\right\}$ received 3 colors. So assume $z_{2}$ and $y_{3}$ received the same color, say 3 . Since $y_{2}$ and $z_{1}$ are at distance 3 from both $y_{3}$ and $z_{3}$, they cannot be colored with 2 or 3 . If $y_{2}$ and $z_{1}$ received different colors then $\left\{z_{2}, y_{2}, z_{1}\right\}$ received three colors and we are done. Assume both $z_{1}$ and $y_{2}$ are colored with 1 , or both are colored with a new color, say 4 . If $z$ is colored with a color different than 2 and 3 then the set $\left\{z, z_{3}, y_{3}\right\}$ received 3 colors. If $z$ is colored with 2 then the set $\left\{z, z_{2}, y_{2}\right\}$ received 3 colors. If $z$ is colored with 3 then the set $\left\{z, z_{4}, y_{4}\right\}$ received 3 colors.
(b) As in part (a) we start with a path $P$ of length six, say $P=w_{1}^{\prime} \ldots w_{7}^{\prime}$. Add a new vertex $z^{\prime}$, then add an edge between $z^{\prime}$ and $w_{i}^{\prime}$ for every $i \in\{1, \ldots, 7\}$. Add a new vertex $z_{i}^{\prime}, 1 \leq i \leq 6$ such that $z_{i}^{\prime}$ is a neighbor for $w_{i}^{\prime}$ and $w_{i+1}^{\prime}$. Then for every $w_{i}^{\prime}$ add a new neighbor $y_{i}^{\prime}$ where $i \in\{1, \ldots, 7\}$, see Figure 3.8 on page 63 . Let $G^{\prime}$ be the outerplanar graph constructed in part (a). For each $i \in\{1, \ldots, 7\}$, add a copy $G_{i}^{\prime}$ of $G^{\prime}$, then add an edge between $w_{i}^{\prime}$ and every vertex in $G_{i}^{\prime}$. This is possible to do without losing planarity because $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is an outerplanar. Now subdivide each edge


Figure 3.8. Part of the Construction of $G$ in (b)
between $V\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$ and $w_{i}^{\prime}$, so the distance between $w_{i}^{\prime}$ and any vertex in $G_{i}^{\prime}$ is two. The resulting graph is the desired planar graph $G$.

From part (a), there are six different colors appearing in the coloring of the subgraph of $G^{[\text {b3] }]}$ induced by $V\left(G_{i}^{\prime}\right)$. Using the same argument used in part (a) we find that for any proper coloring of $G^{[43]}$, one of the sets $\left\{\left\{z_{i-1}^{\prime}, z_{i}^{\prime}, y_{i}^{\prime}, z^{\prime}\right\}_{i \in\{2,3, \ldots, 6\}},\left\{y_{1}^{\prime}, z_{1}^{\prime}, z^{\prime}\right\}\right.$, $\left.\left\{z_{6}^{\prime}, y_{7}^{\prime}, z^{\prime}\right\}\right\}$ received 3 different colors. Assume without loss of generality that the set $\left\{z_{1}^{\prime}, z_{2}^{\prime}, y_{2}^{\prime}, z^{\prime}\right\}$ received 3 colors. In the graph $G$, each vertex in $\left\{z_{1}^{\prime}, z_{2}^{\prime}, y_{2}^{\prime}, z^{\prime}\right\}$ is at distance 3 from each vertex in $G_{2}^{\prime}$. Thus at least 9 colors are needed to properly color $G^{[43]}$.

## Chapter 4

## GENERALIZED COLORING NUMBERS OF PLANAR GRAPHS

In this chapter, we recall a linear ordering $L$ defined by Van den Heuvel et al. [14] to prove that $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \leq 5 r+1$ for planar graphs (Theorem 1.1.5). Then we show that for any planar graph $G, \operatorname{wcol}_{2}[G, L, v] \leq 26$. We end this chapter by giving an example for planar graph $G$ such that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[G, L, v]=26$ for some $v \in G$.

### 4.1 Breadth-first Trees

A breadth-first search is an algorithm for searching trees, it starts at the tree root or at an arbitrary vertex, and explores all the neighbor vertices at the present depth prior to moving to the vertices at the next depth level. The resulted tree is called a breadth-first tree.

Let $T$ be a breadth-first spanning tree. Let $x, x^{\prime} \in T$. We write $x<_{T} x^{\prime}$ if $x$ was found by $T$ before $x^{\prime}$; and we write $x \leq_{T} x^{\prime}$ if $x=x^{\prime}$ or $x<_{T} x^{\prime}$.

Let $T$ be a tree rooted at a vertex $v$. We define the level of a vertex $x \in T$ to be $l_{x}:=\operatorname{dist}_{T}(v, x)$, and we denote the set of vertices $x \in T$ such that $l_{x}=d$ by $D_{d}$.

Lemma 4.1.1. Let $G$ be a graph, and let $T \subseteq G$ be a breadth-first spanning tree with root $r$. Then:

1. the path $r T x$ is isometric for all vertices $x$;
2. if $x x^{\prime} \in E(T), y y^{\prime} \in E(G)$ and $x \leq_{T} x^{\prime} \leq_{T} y^{\prime}$ then $x \leq_{T} y$;
3. if $P_{x}=x_{0} x_{1} \cdots x_{t}$ is a path in $T$ where $x=x_{0}$ and $r=x_{t}$ and $Q=y_{0} \cdots y_{t}$ is a path in $G$ where $x_{0} \leq_{T} y_{0}$ then $x_{i} \leq_{T} y_{i}$ for all $i \in[t]$.

Proof. We argue by induction on $|T|$ to prove (1). The statement is trivial if $|T|=1$. Assume that the statement holds for every breadth-first spanning tree $T$ with $|T| \leq k$ where $k$ is a positive integer.

Assume now that $|T|=k+1$. Let $u$ be the last vertex added to $T$. Clearly, $u$ is a leaf and $T^{\prime}:=T-u$ is a breadth-first spanning tree with root $r$ in $G^{\prime}:=G-u$. By induction hypothesis, the path $r T^{\prime} x(=r T x)$ is isometric in $G^{\prime}$ for all vertices $x \in G^{\prime}$. Assume for contradiction that $r T x$ is not isometric in $G$ for some $x \in G^{\prime}$. Let $P$ be an isometric path in $G$ between $r$ and $x$. Then $u \in P$ and $\|P\|<\|r T x\|$. This contradicts the fact that $x$ is found by $T$ before $u$. Assume that $r T u$ is not isometric in $G$. Let $Q:=v_{0} \ldots v_{i}$ be an isometric path in $G$ where $v_{0}=r$ and $v_{i}=u$, so $\|Q\|<\|r T u\|$. Let $u^{\prime}$ be the unique neighbor of $u$ in $T$, then $\left\|v_{0} Q v_{i-1}\right\|<\left\|r T u^{\prime}\right\|$. This is in contradiction to the fact that $r T^{\prime} u^{\prime}\left(=r T u^{\prime}\right)$ is isometric in $G^{\prime}$ as $v_{0} Q v_{i-1} \subseteq G^{\prime}$.

For (2), observe that if $y<_{T} x$ then $T$ would have explored every leftover neighbor of $y$ before adding $x^{\prime}$ to $T$. This is in contradiction to the fact that $x^{\prime} \leq_{T} y^{\prime}$ and $x x^{\prime} \in E(T)$. Thus $x \leq_{T} y$.

We prove (3) by induction on $\left|P_{x}\right|$. The statement is trivial if $\left|P_{x}\right|=1$. Assume that the statement holds for every path $P_{x}$ with $\left|P_{x}\right| \leq k$. Assume now that $\left|P_{x}\right|=k+1$. Since $r P_{x} x \subseteq T, r \leq_{T} x_{t-1} \leq_{T} \cdots \leq_{T} x_{1} \leq_{T} x$. So $x_{1} \leq_{T} x \leq_{T} y_{0}$. From (2), $x_{1} \leq_{T} y_{1}$. By induction hypothesis, statement (3) holds for the paths $x_{1} P_{x} x_{t}$ and $y_{1} Q y_{t}$. Hence $x_{i} \leq_{T} y_{i}$ for all $i \in[t]$.

### 4.2 Bounds on the Strong $r$-coloring Numbers of Planar Graphs

Let $G$ be a planar graph, and fix a plane drawing $\widetilde{G}$ of $G$. For simplicity, we write $G$ for $\widetilde{G}$. Let $F=F(G)$ denote the set of faces of $G, G[f]$ denote the boundary of the
face $f, V(f)$ denote the set of vertices of $G[f]$ and $G^{*}=\left(F, E^{*}\right)$ denote the dual of $G$. Set $F^{*}:=F\left(G^{*}\right)$. It is well known that every connected plane graph has a connected plane dual.

Lemma 4.2.1. (Proposition 4.6.1, Diestel [7]) For any connected planar graph $G$, an edge set $D \subseteq E(G)$ is the edge set of a cycle in $G$ if and only if $D^{*}:=\left\{e^{*}: e \in D\right\}$ is a minimal cut in $G^{*}$.

Here we present the linear ordering $L$ that witnesses the bound in the following theorem.

Theorem 4.2.2. (Van den Heuvel et al. [14]) Let $G$ be a planar graph and $r$ be a positive integer. Then $\operatorname{scol}_{r}(G) \leq 5 r+1$.

Without loss of generality, assume $G$ is maximal with $|G| \geq 4$. Then $G$ is not a cycle, and so no two faces have the same boundary.

### 4.2.1 Construction of $L$

Fix a vertex $v$, and a breadth-first spanning tree $T \subseteq G$ rooted at $v$. Let $H$ be the spanning subgraph of $G^{*}$ with $E(H)=\left\{e^{*}: e \in E(G) \backslash E(T)\right\}$.

Lemma 4.2.3. $H$ is a spanning tree of $G^{*}$.

Proof. It suffices to show that $\|H\|=|H|-1$ and $H$ is acyclic. As $|H|=|F(G)|$, Euler's Formula yields

$$
\|H\|=\|G\|-\|T\|=(|G|+|F(G)|-2)-(|G|-1)=|F(G)|-1=|H|-1
$$

Since $T$ is a spanning tree in $G$, every cut in $G$ must have an edge in $T$. So $E(G) \backslash E(T)$ does not contain a cut. By Lemma 4.2.1, $H$ is acyclic.

Order the vertices of $H$ (faces of $G$ ) as $f_{0}, \ldots, f_{h}$ using a depth-first search of $H$, starting with the outer face $f_{0}$ of $G$. For all $i \in[h] \cup\{0\}$, let $V\left(f_{i}\right)=\left\{a_{i}, b_{i}, c_{i}\right\}$. For all $i \in[h]$, there is a unique index $j(i)<i$ with $f_{i} f_{j(i)} \in E(H), a_{i} b_{i} \in E(G-T)$ and $a_{i} b_{i}=G\left[f_{i}\right] \cap G\left[f_{j(i)}\right]$. Then $V\left(f_{i}\right) \backslash V\left(f_{j(i)}\right)=\left\{c_{i}\right\}$.

Treating paths $v T x$ as sequences of vertices starting with $v$, define a sequence $\sigma$ (with repeated vertices) by:

$$
\sigma=v T a_{0}^{\wedge} T b_{0}^{\wedge} v T c_{0}^{\wedge} \ldots^{\wedge} v T a_{h}^{\wedge} v T b_{h}^{\wedge} v T c_{h} .
$$

Finally, define an ordering $L$ by $x<_{L} y$ if the first occurrence of $x$ in $\sigma$ comes before the first occurrence of $y$ in $\sigma$. Set $X_{f_{i}}=v T a_{i} \cup v T b_{i} \cup v T c_{i}$. We sometimes write $X_{i}$ instead of $X_{f_{i}}$.

### 4.2.2 Properties of $L$

Consider any $u \in V(G)$. Set $f(u)=f_{i}$, where $i=\min \left\{j: u \in X_{j}\right\}$. If $i \geq 1$ then $u \in v T c_{i}$ since $u \notin X_{j(i)}$ and $a_{i}, b_{i} \in V\left(f_{j(i)}\right) \subseteq X_{j(i)}$. Next we define a cycle $C_{u}$. Let $C_{u}=G\left[f_{0}\right]$ if $f(u)=f_{0}$; else $f(u)=f_{i}$ for some $i>0$; put $e_{u}=a_{i} b_{i}$ and let $C_{u}$ be the unique cycle in $T+e_{u}$. Then $C_{u}=a_{i} T x_{u} T b_{i} a_{i}$ where $x_{u}=\leq_{T}-\max \left(v T a_{i} \cap v T b_{i}\right)$. Let $O_{u}$ be the face of $C_{u}$ not containing $f(u)$ if $f(u)$ is the outer face; else let $O_{u}$ be the face of $C_{u}$ containing $f(u)$. Finally, set $P_{u}=v T u, a(u)=a_{i}, b(u)=b_{i}$ and $c(u)=c_{i}$. See Figure 4.1 on page 68 ; the black edges are in T .

Lemma 4.2.4. (Van den Heuvel et al. [14]) Let $u \in V(G)$ and $f(u)=f_{i}$. Then $V\left(X_{i}\right)<_{L} V\left(O_{u} \backslash X_{i}\right)$.

Proof. If $f(u)=f_{0}$ then $X_{i}=X_{0}=v T a_{0} \cup v T b_{0} \cup v T c_{0}$. as $v T a_{0}^{\wedge} v T b_{0}^{\wedge} v T c_{0}$ is the initial segment of the sequence $\sigma$, the conclusion holds. Suppose $f(u)=f_{i}$ for some


Figure 4.1. $f(u), e_{u}, P_{a(u)}, P_{b(u)}$ and $P_{c(u)}$
$i>0$. Let $z \in V\left(O_{u} \backslash X_{i}\right)$; say $f(z)=f_{k}$. Then $z \in v T a_{k} \cup v T b_{k} \cup v T c_{k}$, say $z \in v T c_{k}$. As $z \in X_{k} \backslash X_{i}, k \neq i$. It suffices to show that $i<k$. Observe that $v \in X_{i} \cap v T z$ and $z \in v T z \backslash X_{i}$; as $T$ is acyclic, $X_{i} \cap z T c_{k}=\emptyset$. Recall that $C_{u} \subseteq X_{i} \cup a_{i} b_{i}$, so $z T c_{k} \subseteq O_{u} \backslash X_{i}$. Since $G$ is planar, $a_{k} b_{k} c_{k} a_{k} \subseteq O_{u} \cup C_{u}$, and so $f_{k} \subseteq O_{u}$. Since $e_{u}=a_{i} b_{i}$ is the only edge of $C_{u}$ in $G-T, f_{i} \in f_{0} H f_{k}$. Thus $i<k$.

Lemma 4.2.5. Let $z \in V(G)$ and $z^{\prime}, z^{\prime \prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash P_{z}$ with $z^{\prime}<_{L} z^{\prime \prime}$ and $z^{\prime} \notin P_{z^{\prime \prime}}$. If $f(z) \neq f_{0}$ then (a) $z \in O_{z^{\prime \prime}} \backslash P_{z^{\prime \prime}}$ and (b) $z^{\prime} \in X_{f\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}$.

Proof. Assume that $f\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right) \neq f_{0}$, then $z^{\prime \prime} \in O_{z^{\prime \prime}}$ and $z^{\prime \prime} \in P_{c\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}-P_{a\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)} \cup P_{b\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}$. As $P_{a\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}$ and $P_{b\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}$ appear before $P_{c\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}$ in the sequence $\sigma, V\left(P_{a\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)} \cup P_{b\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}\right)<_{L} z^{\prime \prime}$. The vertices $z$ and $z^{\prime \prime}$ are adjacent and $G$ is planar, so $z \in O_{z^{\prime \prime}} \cup C_{z^{\prime \prime}}$. Recall that $C_{z^{\prime \prime}}=a\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right) T x_{z^{\prime \prime}} T b\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right) a\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)$. As $V\left(P_{a\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)} \cup P_{b\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}\right)<_{L} z^{\prime \prime}<_{L} z, z \notin C_{z^{\prime \prime}} \cup P_{z^{\prime \prime}}$. Thus $z \in O_{z^{\prime \prime}} \backslash P_{z^{\prime \prime}}$. The vertices $z$ and $z^{\prime}$ are adjacent in the planar graph $G$, so $z^{\prime} \in O_{z^{\prime \prime}} \cup C_{z^{\prime \prime}}$. From the assumption $z^{\prime}<_{L} z^{\prime \prime}$ and Lemma 4.2.4, $z^{\prime} \notin O_{z^{\prime \prime}} \backslash X_{f\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}$. As $C_{z^{\prime \prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}, z^{\prime} \in X_{f\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}$. Assume now that $f\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)=f_{0}$, then $C_{z^{\prime \prime}}=G\left[f_{0}\right]$. From the assumption $f(z) \neq f_{0}, z \notin C_{z^{\prime \prime}}$, and so $z \in O_{z^{\prime \prime}}$. Since $z^{\prime \prime}<_{L} z, z \in O_{z^{\prime \prime}} \backslash v T z^{\prime \prime}$. As $z^{\prime}<{ }_{L} z^{\prime \prime}$ and $f\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)=f_{0}, f\left(z^{\prime}\right)=f_{0}$. Thus $X_{f\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}=X_{f\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$, and so $z^{\prime} \in X_{f\left(z^{\prime \prime}\right)}$.

Theorem 4.2.6. $\mathrm{scol}_{r}[G, L] \leq 5 r+1$

Proof. Fix a vertex $u \in V(G)$ with $f(u)=f_{i}$. To avoid double subscripts, let $a=a_{i}, b=b_{i}, c=c_{i}$.

By Lemma 4.2.4, any path from $u$ to an $L$-smaller vertex must contain a vertex in $X_{i}$. Assume that $f_{i}$ is the outer face and fix notations so that $u \in P_{c}$. Then any vertex $w$ that is strongly $r$-reachable from $u$ must be in $P_{a} \cup P_{b} \cup P_{u}$. If $f_{i}$ is an inner face, then any vertex $w$ that is strongly $r$-reachable from $u$ must be in $C_{u} \cup P_{u}$ as $u \in O_{u}$. So in both cases $w \in P_{a} \cup P_{b} \cup P_{u}$. By Lemma 4.1.1, the paths $P_{a}, P_{b}$ and $P_{u}$ are all isometric. As $\operatorname{Scol}_{r}[L, u] \subseteq N_{r}[u]$, Lemma 1.2.6 tells us that $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{r}[L, u] \cap P_{a}\right|,\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{r}[L, u] \cap P_{b}\right| \leq 2 r+1$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{r}[L, u] \cap P_{u}\right| \leq r+1$. Thus $\operatorname{scol}_{r}[L, u] \leq 5 r+3$. To finish the proof, we improve this bound to $5 r+1$ by showing: if $v_{1}, v_{2} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{r}[L, u] \cap P_{a}$ (also $P_{b}$ ) with $\operatorname{dist}\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right) \geq 2 r$ and $v_{1}<_{L} v_{2}$, then $v_{1} \in P_{u}$.

Consider $v_{1}, v_{2}$ satisfying the hypothesis. As $\left|l_{u}-l_{v_{1}}\right| \leq r$ and $\left|l_{u}-l_{v_{2}}\right| \leq r$, this yields $l_{v_{1}}=l_{u}-r$ and $l_{v_{2}}=l_{u}+r$. Let $Q_{i}$ be the path that witnesses $v_{i} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{r}[L, u]$ for $i \in[2]$. Since $l_{v_{i}}=l_{u}+(-1)^{i} r,\left\|Q_{i}\right\|=r$. Let $R=u_{0} \ldots u_{r} \subseteq P_{u}$ with $u_{0}=u$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $v_{2} T v_{1}$ and $Q_{2} u R, v_{1} \leq_{T} u_{r}$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $R$ and $Q_{1}$, we have $v_{1} \geq_{T} u_{r}$. Thus $v_{1}=u_{r}$, and so $v_{1} \in P_{u}$, proving (4.2.1).

Corollary 4.2.7. Let $u \in V(G)$ with $f(u)=f_{i}$. Then $u$ has at most five $L$-smaller neighbors and they are all in $X_{i}$.

Proof. Take $r=1$ in the previous theorem.

### 4.3 Bounds on $\mathrm{wcol}_{2}[G, L]$

In this section, we prove that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[G, L] \leq 26$. We also give an example for a planar graph $G$ such that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[G, L, u]=26$ for some $u \in G$.

### 4.3.1 Upper Bound

Theorem 4.3.1. $\mathrm{wcol}_{2}[G, L] \leq 26$.
Proof. Consider any vertex $u \in G$; set $l=l_{u}$. Assume first that $f(u)$ is the outer face. As $u \in X_{0}$, all the vertices that are $L$-smaller than $u$ are in $X_{0}=P_{a(u)} \cup P_{b(u)} \cup P_{c(u)}$. As $\mathrm{Wcol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq N_{2}[u]$, Lemma 1.2.6 tells us that $\left|\operatorname{Wcol}_{2}[L, u] \cap P_{a(u)}\right|, \mid \operatorname{Wcol}_{2}[L, u] \cap$ $P_{b(u)}\left|,\left|\mathrm{Wcol}_{2}[L, u] \cap P_{c(u)}\right| \leq 5\right.$. Thus $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 5+5+5=15$.

Assume that $f(u)$ is an inner face. By Lemma 4.2.4,

$$
\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \subseteq\left(C_{u} \cup P_{u}\right) \cap\left(D_{l-1} \cup D_{l} \cup D_{l+1}\right)
$$

We will use the estimate

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] & =\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\mathrm{Wcol}_{2}[L, u] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \\
& \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \\
& \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\sum_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]}\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \\
& \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\sum_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]}\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| .
\end{aligned}
$$

By Lemma 1.2.6 and (4.2.1),
$\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \cap V\left(P_{a(u)}-P_{u}\right)\right|,\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \cap V\left(P_{b(u)}-P_{u}\right)\right| \leq 2$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \cap P_{u}\right| \leq 2$.
We consider three cases. In each case, we first suppose $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \backslash\{u\}\right|=5$, and then make easy modifications for the subcase $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \backslash\{u\}\right|<5$. Choose notation


Figure 4.2. The Three Major Cases of Theorem 4.3.1
so that $u x \in P_{u}$ and $w, w^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \cap V\left(P_{a(u)}-P_{u}\right)$ with $w<_{L} w^{\prime}$ and $z, z^{\prime} \in$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \cap V\left(P_{b(u)}-P_{u}\right)$ with $z<_{L} z^{\prime}$. By (4.2.1), $w w^{\prime}, z z^{\prime} \in E(T)$, if $x \in P_{a(u)}$ then $x w \in E(T)$, and if $x \in P_{b(u)}$ then $x z \in E(T)$. Let $w^{\circ} \in P_{a(u)}$ with $l_{w^{\circ}}=l_{w}-1$, $z^{\circ} \in P_{b(u)}$ with $l_{z^{\circ}}=l_{z}-1$ and let $y \in P_{u}$ with $l_{y}=l_{x}-1$. If they exist, let $w^{\prime \prime} \in P_{a(u)}$ with $l_{w^{\prime \prime}}=l_{w}+2$ and $z^{\prime \prime} \in P_{b(u)}$ with $l_{z^{\prime \prime}}=l_{z}+2$.

Case 1: $x \in P_{\mathrm{a}(u)} \cap P_{b(u)}$, see the first drawing of Figure 4.2 on page 71.
Then $w x z \subseteq T$. So $l_{w}=l_{u}=l_{z}$ and $x=w^{\circ}=z^{\circ}$. If $u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $l_{u}-2 \leq l_{u^{\prime}} \leq l_{u}+2 . \operatorname{Thus} \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq\left\{u, x, y, w, w^{\prime}, w^{\prime \prime}, z, z^{\prime}, z^{\prime \prime}\right\}$, and so $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq$ 9. Since $x, w \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$, and as $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]$, $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 9+4=13$.

Throughout the rest of the proof when we write $v_{i}<v_{j}$ we mean that $v_{i}$ is $L$-smaller than $v_{j}$.

Assume without loss of generality that $w<z$; so $w<z<z^{\prime}$. We have three possibilities regarding the $L$-order of $w^{\prime}$. Assume first that $w<w^{\prime}<z<z^{\prime}$. The $L$-smaller neighbor of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{w^{\prime}}$ is $w$. Since $\left\{w, w^{\prime}\right\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u], \mid \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \mid \leq 4$.

Now we estimate the size of $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$. Note that $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \subseteq$ $\left(P_{a(z)} \cup P_{b(z)} \cup P_{c(z)}\right) \cap\left(D_{l-1} \cup D_{l} \cup D_{l+1}\right)$. Since $w^{\prime}<z$, Lemma 4.2.5 tells us that
$P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$. Since $w^{\prime} \notin P_{z} \subseteq P_{c(z)}$ and $w^{\prime}<z$, either $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$ or $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{b(z)}$, say $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. Since $l_{w}=l_{z}$, all the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{w^{\prime}}$ $\left(x, w\right.$ and $\left.w^{\prime}\right)$ are in $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$. The $L$-smaller neighbor of $z$ in $P_{z}$ is $x$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. By Lemma 4.2.5, $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$. The $L$-smaller neighbor of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{c\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ is $z$. The vertices at levels $l_{z^{\prime}}-1$ and $l_{z^{\prime}}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w$ and $w^{\prime}$. As $\left\{w, w^{\prime}, z, z^{\prime}\right\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Thus $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 13+2 * 4+2+3=26$.

Now assume that $w<z<w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$, the second possibility. By Lemma 4.2.5, $P_{z} \subseteq X_{f\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$. If they exist, let $t, r \in P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{t}=l_{z}+1, l_{r}=l_{z}+2$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $z, t$ and $r$. Since $w, w^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$, $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$. Since $w<z, P_{w} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{w} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If it exists, let $s \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{s}=l_{w}+1$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $x, w$ and $s$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$.

By Lemma 4.2.5, $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$. If it exists, let $s^{\prime} \in P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s^{\prime}}=l_{w^{\prime}}+1$. Since $l_{w^{\prime}}=l_{z^{\prime}}$, the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w, w^{\prime}$ and $s^{\prime}$. The $L$-smaller neighbor of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{z^{\prime}}$ is $z$; since $\left\{w, w^{\prime}, z, z^{\prime}\right\} \subseteq$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. In the rest of this paragraph, we show that $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right|=4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right|=3$ cannot occur at the same time. If $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right|=4$ then $w^{\prime} r \in E(G) ;$ by Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z \operatorname{tr} \subseteq T$ and $w w^{\prime} r \subseteq G, z \leq_{T} w$. If $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right|=3$ then $z^{\prime} s^{\prime} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $w w^{\prime} s^{\prime} \subseteq T$ and $z z^{\prime} s^{\prime} \subseteq G, w \leq_{T} z$. So either $w^{\prime} r \in E(G)$ or $z^{\prime} s^{\prime} \in E(G)$ but not both. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right|+$ $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 6$. Therefore $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 13+4+3+6=26$.

Lastly, assume that $w<z<z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}$. Since $z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}, P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$; assume that $P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$. If it exists, let $s \in P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s}=l_{z^{\prime}}+1$. Since $l_{w^{\prime}}=l_{z^{\prime}}$, the possible
$L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $z, z^{\prime}$ and $s$. $\operatorname{So}\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Also as $w<z, P_{w} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$; assume that $P_{w} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If it exists, let $t \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{t}=l_{w}+1$. Since $l_{w}=l_{z}$, the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $x, w$ and t. So $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. We show that $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right|=3$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right|=3$ cannot occur at the same time. If $\mid \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \mid=3$ then $w^{\prime} s \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z z^{\prime} s \subseteq T$ and $w w^{\prime} s \subseteq$ $G, z \leq_{T} w$. If $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right|=3$ then $z t \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $w t \in E(T)$ and $z t \in E(G), w \leq_{T} z$. So either $w^{\prime} s \in E(G)$ or $z t \in E(G)$ but not both. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right|+\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 5$. With $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ we get $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 13+5+2 * 4=26$.

Case 2: Without loss of generality $x \in P_{a(u)}-P_{b(u)}$.
So $x=w^{\circ}$. See the second drawing of Figure 4.2 on page 71. First we bound $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]$. By (4.2.1), $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \cap V\left(P_{b(u)}-P_{u}\right)\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \cap P_{c(u)}\right| \leq$ 3. Every $u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \cap V\left(P_{a(u)}-P_{u}\right)$ satisfies that $l_{u} \leq l_{u^{\prime}} \leq l_{u}+2$. So $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \cap V\left(P_{a(u)}-P_{u}\right)\right| \leq 3$. Thus $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 4+3+3=10$.

Assume that $w<z$, so $w<z<z^{\prime}$. There are three possibilities regarding the $L$-order of $w^{\prime}$; they are $w<w^{\prime}<z<z^{\prime}, w<z<w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$ and $w<z<z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}$. In all those possibilities, $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ as $\{x, w\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$. Assume first that $w<w^{\prime}<z<z^{\prime}$. The $L$-smaller neighbor of $x$ in $P_{x}$ is $y$. Since $w, w^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$, $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$. Since $w^{\prime}<z$, Lemma 4.2.5 tells us that $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. By Lemma $4.2 .5, P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$. If it exists, let $s \in P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s}=l_{w^{\prime}}+1$.

Assume first that $l_{z}=l_{u}-1$. From Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $z u \in E(G), x \leq_{T} z$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $y, x$ and $w$. The $L$-smaller neighbor of $z$ in $P_{z}$ is $z^{\circ}$. If $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$
then $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. Assume that $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Then $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. We show that $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$. If it exists, let $t \in P_{b(u)}$ with $l_{t}=l_{u}+2$. Assume that $t \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Let $P:=u u^{\prime} t$ be the witnessing path. From Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z z^{\prime} z^{\prime \prime} t \subseteq T$ and $x u u^{\prime} t \subseteq G$ we get $z \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. So $t \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Thus $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \cap P_{b(u)} \subseteq\left\{z, z^{\prime}, z^{\prime \prime}\right\}$, proving that $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$. Assume that $z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Clearly, $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$. Assume that $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] . \operatorname{Then~}_{\operatorname{scol}}^{2}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16$. The possible $L$ smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $x, w$ and $w^{\prime}$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. So $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right|=16+2 * 4+2=26$.

Now assume that $l_{z}=l_{u}$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} \in \subseteq T$ and $x u z^{\prime} \subseteq G, z^{\circ} \leq_{T} x$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $x, w$ and $w^{\prime}$, and the $L$-smaller neighbor of $z$ in $P_{z}$ is $z^{\circ}$. If $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\mid \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. Assume that $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Then $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. We show that $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$. Let $z^{\circ \circ} \in P_{b(u)}$ with $l_{z^{\circ \circ}}=l_{u}-2$. Assume that $z^{\circ \circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ \circ} \neq y$. Let $P:=u u^{\prime} z^{\circ \circ}$ be the witnessing path. From Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $y x u \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ \circ} u^{\prime} u \subseteq G$ we get $y \leq_{T} z^{\circ \circ}$, and so $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. So $z^{\circ \circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Thus $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \cap P_{b(u)} \subseteq\left\{z, z^{\prime}, z^{\prime \prime}\right\}$, proving that $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$. Assume that $z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Clearly, $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$. Assume that $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq$
8. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w, w^{\prime}$ and $s$. Assume that $z^{\prime} s \in E(G)$; by Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $x w w^{\prime} s \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} s \subseteq G$ we have $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. Therefore $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. Thus wcol ${ }_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+$ $\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16+2 * 4+2=26$.

Now assume that $w<z<w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$. The $L$-smaller neighbor of $x$ in $P_{x}$ is $y$. Since $w, w^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$. By Lemma 4.2.5 we get $P_{z} \subseteq X_{f\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$. If they exist, let $s_{1}, s_{2} \in P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s_{1}}=l_{z}+1, l_{s_{2}}=l_{z}+2$. By Lemma 4.2.5 we have $P_{w} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{w} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If it exists, let $s \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{s}=l_{w}+1$. By Lemma 4.2 .5 we have $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$. If it exist, let $s^{\prime} \in P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s^{\prime}}=l_{w^{\prime}}+1$.

Assume that $l_{z}=l_{u}-1$. From Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $z u \in E(G)$ we get $x \leq_{T} z$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $y, x$ and $w$. If $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. Assume that $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Then $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Let $t \in P_{b(u)}$ with $l_{t}=l_{u}+2$. We showed before that $t \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and that $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$. Assume that $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then clearly, $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$. Thus in all cases we have $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $x, w$ and $w^{\prime}$. So $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. Thus $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16+2 * 4+2=26$.

Assume that $l_{z}=l_{u}$. From Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $z z^{\prime} \in E(T)$ and $u z^{\prime} \in E(G)$ we get $z \leq_{T} u$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $z, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$.

Assume that $w^{\prime} s_{2} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z s_{1} s_{2} \subseteq T$ and $w w^{\prime} s_{2} \subseteq G$ we get $z \leq_{T} w$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $x, w$ and $s$. Assume that $z s \in E(G)$; by Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $w s \in E(T)$ and $z s \in E(G)$ we get $w \leq_{T} z$. So either $z s \in E(G)$ or $w^{\prime} s_{2} \in E(G)$ but not both. Assume without loss of generality that $z s \in E(G)$ and $w^{\prime} s_{2} \notin E(G)$. Then $\mid \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 3$. If $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Assume that $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Then $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$. We showed before that in this case $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$. Assume that $z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Clearly, $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$. Assume that $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 9$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 17$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w, w^{\prime}$ and $s^{\prime}$. Assume that $z^{\prime} s^{\prime} \in E(G)$, by Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $x w w^{\prime} s^{\prime} \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} s^{\prime} \subseteq G$ we get $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, and so $u \leq_{T} z$, a contradiction. Thus $z^{\prime} s^{\prime} \notin E(G)$, and so $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. Therefore $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 17+4+3+2=26$.

Now assume that $w<z<z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}$. Lemma 4.2.5 tells us that $P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$. If they exist, let $s_{1}, s_{2} \in P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s_{1}}=l_{z^{\prime}}+1, l_{s_{2}}=l_{z^{\prime}}+2$. As $w<z$, $P_{w} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{w} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If it exists, let $t \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{t}=l_{w}+1$. Since $w<z^{\prime}$, Lemma 4.2.5 tells us that $P_{w} \subseteq X_{f\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{w} \subseteq P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$. If it exists, let $t_{1}, t_{2} \in P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{t_{1}}=l_{w}+1, l_{t_{2}}=l_{w}+2$.

Assume first that $l_{z}=l_{u}-1$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $z u \in E(G)$ we get $x \leq_{T} z$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $z^{\prime}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$. Assume that $w^{\prime} s_{2} \in E(G)$; by Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z z^{\prime} s_{1} s_{2} \subseteq E(T)$ and $x w w^{\prime} s_{2} \subseteq E(G)$ we get $z \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. So $w^{\prime} s_{2} \notin E(G)$. Thus
$\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. The $L$-smaller neighbor of $x$ in $P_{x}$ is $y$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $y, x$ and $w$, and the $L$-smaller neighbor of $z$ in $P_{z}$ is $z^{\circ}$. Note that $x, w, z \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$. If $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9,\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. If $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$, then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq$ $9,\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$. Thus in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+$ $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $x, w$ and $t_{1}$. Since $x, w, z^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Thus $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16+4+2 * 3=26$.

Now assume that $l_{z}=l_{u}$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} \subseteq T$ and $x u z^{\prime} \subseteq G$ we get $z^{\circ} \leq_{T} x$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $z, z^{\prime}$ and $s_{1}$. Since $w, w^{\prime}, z, z^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $x, w$ and $t$. Assume that $z t \in E(G)$; by Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $x w t \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z t \subseteq G$ we get $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. Thus $z t \notin E(G)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9,\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq$ 4 and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. If $z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9,\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 5$ and $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 8,\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 5$ and $\mid \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 3$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right|+\mid \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 16$. So The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w, t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$. Assume that $z^{\prime} t_{2} \in E(G) ;$ by Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $x w t_{1} t_{2} \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} t_{2} \subseteq G$ we get that $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. Thus $z^{\prime} t_{2} \notin E(G)$, and so $\mid \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash$
$\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \mid \leq 3 . \quad$ Therefore $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\sum_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \mid \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right] \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 16+4+2 * 3=26$.

Assume that $z<w$; so $z<w<w^{\prime}$. We have three possibilities regarding the $L$-order of $z^{\prime}$. They are $z<z^{\prime}<w<w^{\prime}, z<w<z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}$ and $z<w<w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$. We discuss each possibility.

Assume that $z<z^{\prime}<w<w^{\prime}$. Since $z, z^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq$ 4. Since $z^{\prime}<w$, Lemma 4.2 .5 tells us that $P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f(w)}$, say $P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a(w)}$. If it exists, let $t \in P_{a(w)}$ with $l_{t}=l_{z^{\prime}}+1$. Since $z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}, P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$. If they exist, let $s_{1}, s_{2} \in P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s_{1}}=l_{z^{\prime}}+1, l_{s_{2}}=l_{z^{\prime}}+2$.

Assume first that $l_{z}=l_{u}-1$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $z u \in E(G)$ we get $x \leq_{T} z$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w$ in $P_{a(w)}$ are $z, z^{\prime}$ and $t$. Assume that $w t \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z z^{\prime} t \subseteq T$ and $x w t \subseteq G$ we get $z \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. Thus $w t \notin E(G)$, so $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $z^{\prime}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$. Assume that $w^{\prime} s_{2} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z z^{\prime} s_{1} s_{2} \subseteq T$ and $x w w^{\prime} s_{2} \subseteq G$ we get $z \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$.

Assume that $z<x$; then $P_{z} \subseteq X_{f(x)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a(x)}$. If it exists, let $s \in P_{a(x)}$ with $l_{s}=l_{z}+1$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $P_{a(x)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z$ and $s$. Assume that $x s \in E(G)$; by Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $z s \in E(T)$ and $x s \in E(G)$ we get $z \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. So $x s \notin E(G)$. Thus the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z, y$ and two more vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. The possible $L$-smaller vertices of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $z^{\circ}$, two vertices in $P_{a(z)}-P_{z}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. If $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 6$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then
$\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8 . \quad$ So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16$.

Now assume that $x<z$; then $P_{x} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{x} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If it exists, let $x^{\prime} \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{x^{\prime}}=l_{x}+1$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $y, x$ and $x^{\prime}$. So the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $y, x, x^{\prime}, z^{\circ}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $y$, two vertices in $P_{a(x)}-P_{x}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. If $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 9$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup\right.$ $\left.\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 17$. Thus in both cases (i.e., $z<x$ and $x<z$ ) we have $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 17+2+3+4=26$.

Assume that $l_{z}=l_{u}$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} \subseteq T$ and $x u z^{\prime} \subseteq G$ we get $z^{\circ} \leq_{T} x$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $z, z^{\prime}$ and $s_{1}$. Since $w, w^{\prime}, z, z^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w$ in $P_{a(w)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z$ and $z^{\prime}$. So the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w$ in $X_{f(w)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z, z^{\prime}, x$ and two vertices in $P_{b(w)}-P_{w}$.

Assume that $z<x$. By Lemma 4.2 .5 we get $P_{z} \subseteq X_{f(x)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a(x)}$. Let $z^{\circ \circ} \in P_{a(x)}$ with $l_{z^{\circ \circ}}=l_{x}-1$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $P_{a(x)}$ are $z^{\circ \circ}, z^{\circ}$ and $z$. Assume that $z^{\circ \circ} \neq y$ and $x z^{\circ \circ} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) we get $y \leq_{T} z^{\circ \circ}$, and so $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. So either $z^{\circ \circ}=y$ or $x z^{\circ \circ} \notin E(G)$. Thus the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $y, z^{\circ}, z$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $z^{\circ}$, two vertices in $P_{a(z)}-P_{z}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup\right.$
$\left.\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 8$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 9$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 10$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 18$.

Assume that $x<z$. By Lemma 4.2 .5 we get $P_{x} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{x} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If they exist, let $v_{1}, v_{2} \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{v_{1}}=l_{x}+1, l_{v_{2}}=l_{x}+2$. Assume that $z v_{2} \in E(G)$; by Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $x v_{1} v_{2} \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z v_{2} \subseteq G$ we get $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. So $z v_{2} \notin E(G)$. Thus the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $z^{\circ}, x, v_{1}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. The possible $L$-smaller vertices of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $y$, two vertices in $P_{a(x)}-P_{x}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 9$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 10$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ ). If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 11$. Thus in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 19$. Thus in both cases (i.e., $x<z$ or $z<x$ ) we have $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq$ $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 19+3+4=26$.

Assume that $z<w<z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}$. Since $z<w, P_{z} \subseteq X_{f(w)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a(w)}$. If they exist, let $v_{1}, v_{2} \in P_{a(w)}$ with $l_{v_{1}}=l_{z}+1, l_{v_{2}}=l_{z}+2$. Since $z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}$, Lemma 4.2.5 tells us that $P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{z^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$. If they exist, let $s_{1}, s_{2} \in P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s_{1}}=l_{z^{\prime}}+1, l_{s_{2}}=l_{z^{\prime}}+2$. Since $w<z^{\prime}$, Lemma 4.2.5 tells us that $P_{w} \subseteq X_{f\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{w} \subseteq P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$. Let $t_{1}, t_{2} \in P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{t_{1}}=l_{w}+1, l_{t_{2}}=l_{w}+2$.

Assume first that $l_{z}=l_{u}-1$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $z u \in$ $E(G)$ we find that $x \leq_{T} z$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w$ in $P_{a(w)}$ are $z, v_{1}$ and
$v_{2}$. Assume that $w v_{2} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z v_{1} v_{2} \subseteq T$ and $x w v_{2} \subseteq G$ we get $z \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. So $w v_{2} \notin E(G)$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $z^{\prime}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$. Assume that $w^{\prime} s_{2} \in$ $E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z z^{\prime} s_{1} s_{2} \subseteq T$ and $x w w^{\prime} s_{2} \subseteq G$ we get $z \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. So $w^{\prime} s_{2} \notin E(G)$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $x, w$ and $t_{1}$. So $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$.

Assume that $z<x$. Then $P_{z} \subseteq X_{f(x)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a(x)}$. If it exists, let $t \in P_{a(x)}$ with $l_{t}=l_{z}+1$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z, t, y$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $z^{\circ}$, two vertices in $P_{a(z)}-P_{z}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 9 . S o$ in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup\right.$ $\left.\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 17$.

Assume that $x<z$. Then $P_{x} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{x} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If it exists, let $s \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{s}=l_{x}+1$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $y, x, s, z^{\circ}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $y$, two vertices in $P_{a(x)}-P_{x}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 9$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup\right.$ $\left.\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 17$. Thus in both cases (i.e., $x<z$ or $z<x$ ) we have $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 17+3 * 3=26$.

Assume that $l_{z}=l_{u}$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} \subseteq T$ and $x u z^{\prime} \subseteq G$ we get $z^{\circ} \leq_{T} x$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $z, z^{\prime}$ and $s_{1}$. As $z, z^{\prime}, w, w^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w, t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$. Assume that $z^{\prime} t_{2} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $x w t_{1} t_{2} \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} t_{2} \subseteq G$ we get $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. So $z^{\prime} t_{2} \notin E(G)$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w$ in $P_{a(w)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z$ and $v_{1}$. Thus the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w$ in $X_{f(w)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z, v_{1}, x$ and two vertices in $P_{b(w)}-P_{w}$.

Assume that $z<x$. By Lemma 4.2 .5 we get $P_{z} \subseteq X_{f(x)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a(x)}$. Let $z^{\circ 0} \in P_{a(x)}$ with $l_{z^{\circ \circ}}=l_{z}-2$. Assume that $z^{\circ \circ} \neq y$ and $x z^{\circ \circ} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $y x \in E(T)$ and $x z^{\circ \circ} \in E(G)$ we get $y \leq_{T} z^{\circ \circ}$, and so $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. So either $z^{\circ 0}=y$ or $x z^{\circ 0} \notin E(G)$. Thus the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z, y$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. The possible $L$ smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $z^{\circ}$, two vertices in $P_{a(z)}-P_{z}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 9$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 10$ (same result is true if $y \notin$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 11$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+$ $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 19$.

Assume that $x<z$. By Lemma 4.2.5 we get $P_{x} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{x} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If they exist, let $x_{1}, x_{2} \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{x_{1}}=l_{x}+1, l_{x_{2}}=l_{x}+2$. Assume that $z x_{2} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $x x_{1} x_{2} \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z x_{2} \subseteq G$ we get $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. So $z x_{2} \notin E(G)$. Thus the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $x, x_{1}, z^{\circ}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $y$, two
vertices in $P_{a(x)}-P_{x}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 10$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 11$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 12$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 20$. Thus in both cases (i.e., $x<z$ or $z<x$ ) we have $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq$ $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 20+3 * 2=26$.

Assume now that $z<w<w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$. Lemma 4.2.5 tells us that $P_{z} \subseteq X_{f(w)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a(w)}$. If they exist, let $s_{1}, s_{2} \in P_{a(w)}$ with $l_{s_{1}}=l_{z}+1, l_{s_{2}}=l_{z}+2$. Lemma 4.2.5 tells us that $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$. If it exists, let $s \in P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s}=l_{w^{\prime}}+1$.

Assume first that $l_{z}=l_{u}-1$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $z u \in E(G)$ we get $x \leq_{T} z$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w$ in $P_{a(w)}$ are $z, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$. Assume that $w s_{2} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z s_{1} s_{2} \subseteq T$ and $x w s_{2} \subseteq G$ we get $z \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. So $w s_{2} \notin E(G)$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Since $w, w^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u],\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $x, w$ and $w^{\prime}$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$.

Assume that $z<x$. So $P_{z} \subseteq X_{f(x)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a(x)}$. If it exists, let $v^{\prime} \in P_{a(x)}$ with $l_{v^{\prime}}=l_{z}+1$. So the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $P_{a(x)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z$ and $v^{\prime}$. Assume that $x v^{\prime} \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $z v^{\prime} \in E(T)$ and $x v^{\prime} \in E(G)$ we get $z \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. So $x v^{\prime} \notin E(G)$. Thus the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z, y$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $z^{\circ}$, two vertices in $P_{a(z)}-P_{z}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 6$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$
(same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16$.

Assume that $x<z$. So $P_{x} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{x} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If it exists, let $t \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{t}=l_{x}+1$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $P_{a(z)}$ are $y, x$ and $t$. So the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $y, x, t, z^{\circ}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $y$, two vertices in $P_{a(x)}-P_{x}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 9$. So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup\right.$ $\left.\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 17$. Thus in both cases (i.e., $x<z$ or $z<x$ ) we have $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 17+3+4+2=26$.

Assume that $l_{z}=l_{u}$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} \subseteq T$ and $x u z^{\prime} \subseteq G$ we get $z^{\circ} \leq_{T} x$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w$ in $P_{a(w)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z$ and $s_{1}$. Assume that $z^{\circ} w \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x w \in E(T)$ and $z^{\circ} w \in E(G)$ we get $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $w^{\prime}$ in $X_{f\left(w^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w$, two vertices in $P_{a\left(w^{\prime}\right)}-P_{w^{\prime}}$ and two vertices in $P_{b\left(w^{\prime}\right)}-P_{w^{\prime}}$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 4$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w, w^{\prime}$ and $s$. Assume that $z^{\prime} s \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $x w w^{\prime} s \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} s \subseteq G$ we get $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. So $z^{\prime} s \notin E(G)$. Thus $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 2$.

Assume that $z<x$. By Lemma 4.2 .5 we get $P_{z} \subseteq X_{f(x)}$, say $P_{z} \subseteq P_{a(x)}$. Let $z^{\circ 0} \in P_{a(x)}$ with $l_{z^{\circ \circ}}=l_{z}-2$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $P_{a(x)}$ are
$z^{\circ 0}, z^{\circ}$ and $z$. Assume that $z^{\circ \circ} \neq y$ and $z^{\circ 0} x \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $y x \in E(T)$ and $z^{00} x \in E(G)$ we get $y \leq_{T} z^{\circ 0}$. So $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. Thus either $z^{\circ \circ}=y$ or $z^{\circ \circ} x \notin E(G)$. So the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $z^{\circ}, z, y$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $z^{\circ}$, two vertices in $P_{a(z)}-P_{z}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 6$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8 . \quad$ So in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 16$.

Assume that $x<z$. By Lemma 4.2 .5 we get $P_{x} \subseteq X_{f(z)}$, say $P_{x} \subseteq P_{a(z)}$. If they exist, let $t_{1}, t_{2} \in P_{a(z)}$ with $l_{t_{1}}=l_{x}+1, l_{t_{2}}=l_{x}+2$. Assume that $z t_{2} \in$ $E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $x t_{1} t_{2} \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z t_{2} \subseteq G$ we get $x \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. So the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z$ in $X_{f(z)}$ are $x, t_{1}, z^{\circ}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(z)}-P_{z}$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $x$ in $X_{f(x)}$ are $y$, two vertices in $P_{a(x)}-P_{x}$ and two vertices in $P_{b(x)}-P_{x}$. Therefore if $y, z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 7$. If $y \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 8$ (same result is true if $y \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $\left.z^{\circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right)$. If $y, z^{\circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $\operatorname{scol}_{1}[L, u] \leq 8$ and $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 9 . S o$ in all cases $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \cup\right.$ $\left.\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 17$. Thus in both cases (i.e., $x<z$ or $z<x$ ) we have $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 17+3+4+2=26$.

Case 3: $x \notin P_{a(u)} \cup P_{b(u)}$. See the third drawing of Figure 4.2 on page 71.
By Theorem 4.2.6, $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 11$. Assume without loss of generality that $w<z$. So $w<z<z^{\prime}$. There are three possibilities regarding the $L$-order of $w^{\prime}$. They are
$w<w^{\prime}<z<z^{\prime}, w<z<w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$ and $w<z<z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}$. If they exist, let $s \in P_{a(u)}$ with $l_{s}=l_{w}+3$ and $t \in P_{b(u)}$ with $l_{t}=l_{z}+3$.

Assume that $w<w^{\prime}<z<z^{\prime} . ~ S i n c e ~ w, w^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u], \mid \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \backslash$ $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 4$. Since $w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$, Lemma 4.2.5 tells us that $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq X_{f\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$, say $P_{w^{\prime}} \subseteq P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$. If they exist, let $s^{\prime}, s^{\prime \prime} \in P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ with $l_{s^{\prime}}=l_{w^{\prime}}+1, l_{s^{\prime \prime}}=l_{w^{\prime}}+2$. Assume first that $l_{u}=l_{w^{\prime}}=l_{z^{\prime}}$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $w u \in E(G)$ we get $x \leq_{T} w$. Similarly, we get $x \leq_{T} z$. Assume that $s \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Let $P:=u u^{\prime} s$ be the witnessing path. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $w w^{\prime} w^{\prime \prime} s \subseteq T$ and $x u u^{\prime} s \subseteq G$ we get $w \leq_{T} x$, a contradiction. So $s \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$, analogously we get $t \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Let $A:=\left\{y, x, u, w^{\circ}, w, w^{\prime}, w^{\prime \prime}, z^{\circ}, z, z^{\prime}, z^{\prime \prime}\right\}$. Clearly, $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq A$. Also $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq\left\{y, x, w^{\circ}, w, w^{\prime}, z^{\circ}, z, z^{\prime}\right\} \subseteq A$. Therefore $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 11$. The unique neighbor of $w$ in $P_{w}$ is $w^{\circ}$, the unique neighbor of $z$ in $P_{z}$ is $z^{\circ}$ and $w^{\circ}, z^{\circ} \in A$. Thus $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup\right.$ $\left.\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 11+2 * 4=19$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w, w^{\prime}$ and $s^{\prime}$. So $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Thus $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 19+4+3=26$.

Assume that $l_{u}=l_{w}=l_{z}$. Let $w^{\circ \circ} \in P_{a(u)}$ with $l_{w^{\circ \circ}}=l_{w}-2$ and $z^{\circ \circ} \in P_{b(u)}$ with $l_{z^{\circ \circ}}=l_{z}-2$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $w w^{\prime} \in E(T)$ and $u w^{\prime} \in E(G)$ we get $w \leq_{T} u$, analogously we get $z \leq_{T} u$. Assume that $w^{\circ \circ} \neq y$ and $w^{\circ \circ} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Let $P:=w^{\circ \circ} u^{\prime} u$ be the witnessing path. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $y x u \subseteq T$ and $w^{\circ \circ} u^{\prime} u \subseteq G$ we get $y \leq_{T} w^{\circ \circ}$. So $x \leq_{T} w^{\circ}$ and then $u \leq_{T} w$, a contradiction. Thus $w^{\circ \circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$, analogously we get $z^{\circ \circ} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ if $z^{\circ \circ} \neq y$. Then $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq A$. Assume that $w^{\circ \circ} \neq y$ and $w^{\circ \circ} x \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $y x \in E(T)$ and $w^{\circ \circ} x \in E(G)$ we get $y \leq_{T} w^{\circ \circ}$ which leads to a contradiction as we have just seen. Thus $w^{\circ 0} x \notin E(G)$, similarly, we get $z^{\circ 0} x \notin E(G)$ if $z^{\circ 0} \neq y$.

So $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq\left\{y, x, w^{\circ}, w, z^{\circ}, z\right\} \subseteq A$. The unique neighbor of $w$ in $P_{w}$ is $w^{\circ}$, the unique neighbor of $z$ in $P_{z}$ is $z^{\circ}$ and $w^{\circ}, z^{\circ} \in A$. Thus $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\mid\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup\right.$ $\left.\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \mid \leq 11+2 * 4=19$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w, w^{\prime}$ and $s^{\prime}$. So $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Thus $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 19+4+3=26$.

Assume that $l_{w^{\prime}} \neq l_{z^{\prime}}$. In this case either $l_{w^{\prime}}=l_{u}=l_{z^{\prime}}-1$ or $l_{w^{\prime}}-1=l_{u}=l_{z^{\prime}}$. By the two previous paragraphs we get $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq A$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq A$. The unique neighbor of $w$ in $P_{w}$ is $w^{\circ}$ and the unique neighbor of $z$ in $P_{z}$ is $z^{\circ}$. Thus $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+$ $\left|\left(\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \cup \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 11+2 * 4=19$. Assume that $l_{w^{\prime}}=l_{u}=l_{z^{\prime}}-1$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $w u \in E(G)$ we get $x \leq_{T} w$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} \subseteq E(T)$ and $x u z^{\prime} \subseteq E(G)$ we get $z^{\circ} \leq_{T} x$. So $z^{\circ} \leq_{T} w$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w^{\prime}, s^{\prime}$ and $s^{\prime \prime}$. Assume that $z^{\prime} s^{\prime \prime} \in E(T)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $w w^{\prime} s^{\prime} s^{\prime \prime} \subseteq T$ and $z^{\circ} z z^{\prime} s^{\prime \prime} \subseteq G$ we get $w \leq_{T} z^{\circ}$, a contradiction. So the possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w^{\prime}$ and $s^{\prime}$, and then $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Assume that $l_{w^{\prime}}-1=l_{u}=l_{z^{\prime}}$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $z u \in E(G)$ we get $x \leq_{T} z$. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $w^{\circ} w w^{\prime} \in E(T)$ and $x u w^{\prime} \in E(G)$ we get $w^{\circ} \leq_{T} x$. So $w^{\circ} \leq_{T} z$. The possible $L$-smaller neighbors of $z^{\prime}$ in $P_{a\left(z^{\prime}\right)}$ are $w^{\circ}, w, w^{\prime} \in A$. Therefore $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq \operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 11+3 * 4+3=26$.

Assume that $w<z<w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$. Note that the facts that $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u], \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq A$ were independent from the $L$-order of $w, w^{\prime}, z, z^{\prime}$. So even in this case we have $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u], \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq A$. In the previous case we used only the inequality $w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$ to show that $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Since the inequality $w^{\prime}<z^{\prime}$ is still valid in this case, we get $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 3$. Therefore $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq$ $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u]+\left|\left(\cup_{u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]} \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, u^{\prime}\right]\right) \backslash \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]\right| \leq 11+3 * 4+3=26$.

Assume that $w<z<z^{\prime}<w^{\prime}$. Again $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u], \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq A$. By interchanging the roles of $w^{\prime}$ and $z^{\prime}$ in the previous cases we get the same result.

The proof above was for the case $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \backslash\{u\}\right|=5$. Assume now that $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \backslash\{u\}\right| \leq 4$. Let $x \in P_{u}$ with $l_{x}=l_{u}-1$, and if it exists, let $y \in P_{u}$ with $l_{y}=l_{u}-2$. Assume that $x \in P_{a(u)} \cap P_{b(u)}$. If they exist, let $w, w^{\prime}, w^{\prime \prime} \in P_{a(u)}$ at levels $l_{u}, l_{u}+1, l_{u}+2$ respectively, and let $z, z^{\prime}, z^{\prime \prime} \in P_{b(u)}$ at levels $l_{u}, l_{u}+1, l_{u}+2$ respectively. Let $B:=\left\{u, x, y, w, w^{\prime}, w^{\prime \prime}, z, z^{\prime}, z^{\prime \prime}\right\}$. Then $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq B$. Note that $\left|\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \backslash\{x\}\right| \leq 5$. Let $u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \backslash\{x, u\}$. The unique neighbor of $u^{\prime}$ in $P_{u^{\prime}}$ is in $B$. Therefore $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9+5+3 * 4=26$.

Assume without loss of generality that $x \in P_{a(u)}-P_{b(u)}$. If they exist, let $w, w^{\prime}, w^{\prime \prime} \in$ $P_{a(u)}$ at levels $l_{u}, l_{u}+1, l_{u}+2$ respectively. If they exist, let $z_{1}, z_{2}, z_{3}, z_{4}, z_{5} \in P_{b(u)}$ at levels $l_{u}-2, l_{u}-1, l_{u}, l_{u}+1, l_{u}+2$ respectively. Let $C_{1}:=\left\{y, x, u, w, w^{\prime}, w^{\prime \prime}, z_{1}, z_{2}, z_{3}, z_{4}\right\}$ and $C_{2}:=\left\{y, x, u, w, w^{\prime}, w^{\prime \prime}, z_{2}, z_{3}, z_{4}, z_{5}\right\}$. Note that either $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq C_{1}$ or $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq C_{2}$. Assume that $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq C_{1}$. For each $u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$, the unique neighbor of $u^{\prime}$ in $P_{u^{\prime}}$ is in $C_{1}$. Thus $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 10+4 * 4=26$. Assume that $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq C_{2}$. Assume that $z_{5} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$, then $\operatorname{scol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9$. For each $u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u] \backslash\left\{z_{2}\right\}$, the unique neighbor of $u^{\prime}$ in $P_{u^{\prime}}$ is in $C_{2}$. Thus $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 9+5+3 * 4=26$. Assume that $z_{5} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Let $P:=u z z_{5}$ be the witnessing path. By Lemma 4.1.1(3) applied to $z_{2} z_{3} z_{4} z_{5} \subseteq T$ and $x u z z_{5} \subseteq G$ we get $z_{2} \leq_{T} x$. Assume that $z_{2} u \in E(G)$; by Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $x u \in E(T)$ and $z_{2} u \in E(G)$ we get $x \leq_{T} z_{2}$, a contradiction. So $z_{2} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$. Thus for every $u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$, the unique neighbor of $u^{\prime}$ in $P_{u^{\prime}}$ is in $C_{2}$. Therefore $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 10+4 * 4=26$.

Assume that $x \notin P_{a(u)} \cup P_{b(u)}$. If they exist, let $w_{1}, \ldots, w_{5} \in P_{a(u)}$ with $l_{w_{i}}=$ $l_{u}+(i-3)$ and let $z_{1}, \ldots, z_{5} \in P_{b(u)}$ with $l_{z_{i}}=l_{u}+(i-3)$. Assume that $w_{5}, z_{5} \notin$
$\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$. Let $D_{1}:=\left\{y, x, u, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{4}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{4}\right\}$, then $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq D_{1}$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq D_{1}$. For each $u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$, the unique neighbor of $u^{\prime}$ in $P_{u^{\prime}}$ is in $D_{1}$. Since $\left|D_{1}\right| \leq 11, \operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 11+3 * 4=23$. Assume without loss of generality that $w_{5} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ and $z_{5} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] ;$ then as we showed in the previous paragraph, $z_{2} \leq_{T} x$ and $z_{2} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$. Let $D_{2}:=\left\{y, x, u, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{4}, z_{2}, \ldots, z_{5}\right\}$. By (4.2.1) if both $z_{1}, z_{5} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $z_{1} \in P_{u}$ (i.e., $z_{1}=y$ ). Thus $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq D_{2}$. Assume that $z_{1} \neq y$ and $z_{1} x \in E(G)$. By Lemma 4.1.1(2) applied to $y x \in E(T)$ and $z_{1} x \in E(G)$ we get $y \leq_{T} z_{1}$, and so $x \leq_{T} z_{2}$, a contradiction. Thus $z_{1} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]$ and so $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq D_{2}$. For every $u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$, the unique neighbor of $u^{\prime}$ in $P_{u^{\prime}}$ is in $D_{2}$. Therefore $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 11+3 * 4=23$. Assume that $w_{5}, z_{5} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$, then $w_{2} \leq_{T} x, z_{2} \leq_{T} x$ and $w_{2}, z_{2} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$. Let $D_{3}:=\left\{y, x, u, w_{2}, \ldots, w_{5}, z_{2}, \ldots, z_{5}\right\}$. By (4.2.1) if $w_{1}, w_{5} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $w_{1}=y$, similarly, if $z_{1}, z_{5} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$ then $z_{1}=y$. Thus $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u] \subseteq D_{3}$. We have seen that assuming $z_{1} \neq y$ and $z_{1} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]$ led to a contradiction. Analogously we also have $w_{1} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]$ if $w_{1} \neq y$. Thus $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq D_{3}$. Since $w_{2}, z_{2} \notin \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$, for every $u^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$, the unique neighbor of $u^{\prime}$ in $P_{u^{\prime}}$ is in $D_{3}$. Therefore $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 11+3 * 4=23$.

### 4.3.2 Example

In the above technic of defining the ordering $L$, choosing the drawing of $G$ and the vertex $v$ are arbitrary. When a drawing of $G$ and a vertex $v$ are fixed, we perform a breadth-first search of $G$ starting from $v$. The graph $G$ could have several breadth-first trees rooted at $v$. Any one of those trees is a candidate for $T$. When $T$ is fixed, the spanning tree $H$ of $G^{*}$ is determined in a unique way. Then we perform a depth-first search $F$ of $H$ starting from the outer face $f_{0}$. This could be done in several ways


Figure 4.3. $G^{\prime}\left[A^{\prime} \cup\left\{c, w_{1}, w_{2}\right\}\right]$
(i.e., $F$ is not unique). We give an example of a maximal planar graph $G^{\prime}$ with a fixed drawing, a vertex $v$, a breadth-first tree $T^{\prime}$ rooted at $v$ and a depth-first search $F^{\prime}$ of $H^{\prime}$ rooted at the outer face $f_{0}$ such that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}\left[G^{\prime}, L\right]=26$ where $L$ is a linear order constructed using the above technic.

We use Figure 4.3 on page 90 to illustrate the drawing $\widetilde{G^{\prime}}$ of the graph $G^{\prime}$. For
simplicity, we write $G^{\prime}$ for $\widetilde{G^{\prime}}$. The boundary of the outer face $f_{0}$ is the cycle $C:=a b c a$. Let $P_{1}:=v z_{1} z_{2} a, P_{2}:=v z_{3} z_{4} b$ and $P_{3}:=v w_{1} w_{2} c$. The paths union $P_{1} \cup P_{2} \cup P_{3}$ divides the internal region of $R^{2} \backslash C$ into three identical regions: $A$ (the region bounded by $\left.a P_{1} v P_{2} b a\right), B$ (the region bounded by $b P_{2} v P_{3} c b$ ) and $C$ (the region bounded by $a P_{1} v P_{3} c a$ ). Let $A^{\prime}$ be the set of vertices of $G^{\prime}$ in region $A$ or it's boundary (i.e., $\left.a P_{1} v P_{2} b a\right)$. Define the sets $B^{\prime}$ and $C^{\prime}$ in a similar way. We give in Figure 4.3 on page 90 the drawing of $G^{\prime}$ that is induced by $A^{\prime} \cup\left\{c, w_{1}, w_{2}\right\}$, we denote the drawing induced by $A^{\prime}$ by $G^{\prime}\left[A^{\prime}\right]$. The drawings $G^{\prime}\left[B^{\prime}\right]$ and $G^{\prime}\left[C^{\prime}\right]$ are each identical to $G^{\prime}\left[A^{\prime}\right]$. Choose a breadth-first tree $T^{\prime}$ of $G^{\prime}$ such that $T^{\prime}$ satisfies the following. $T^{\prime}$ is rooted at $v$, it satisfies that $z_{1} \leq_{T^{\prime}} z_{2} \leq_{T^{\prime}} x \leq_{T^{\prime}} w_{1}$, the subtree $T^{\prime}\left[A^{\prime}\right]$ and the ordering $\leq_{T^{\prime}}$ induced by $A^{\prime}$ coincide with Figure 4.4 on page 92. In Figure 4.3 on page 90 the edges $E\left(T^{\prime}\right)$ are colored black (the thin edges) and $E\left(G^{\prime}\right) \backslash E\left(T^{\prime}\right)$ are colored green (the thick edges).

Let $H^{\prime}$ be the spanning subgraph of the dual graph $\left(G^{\prime}\right)^{*}$ of $G^{\prime}$ with $E\left(H^{\prime}\right)=\left\{e^{*}\right.$ : $\left.e \in E\left(G^{\prime}\right) \backslash E\left(T^{\prime}\right)\right\}$. Lemma 4.2.3 tells us that $H^{\prime}$ is a spanning tree of $\left(G^{\prime}\right)^{*}$. We will construct a depth-first search tree of $H^{\prime}$ starting from $f_{0}$. This tree is presented by an ordering $F^{\prime}$ of $V\left(H^{\prime}\right)$ (faces of $G^{\prime}$ ). We write $f<_{F^{\prime}} f^{\prime}$ if $f$ appears before $f^{\prime}$ in the ordering $F^{\prime}$.

The root $v$ is the first vertex in the ordering $L$. The vertices $z_{1}, z_{2}, z_{3}, z_{4} \in X_{0}=$ $P_{a} \cup P_{b} \cup P_{c}$. It is not important which one of those four vertices comes first in $L$, so assume without loss of generality that $z_{1}<_{L} z_{2}<_{L} z_{3}<_{L} z_{4}$. Let $f_{1} \in V\left(H^{\prime}\right)$ be the face that is bounded by $a b z_{6} a$. Note that $a b \in G^{\prime}\left[f_{0}\right] \cap G^{\prime}\left[f_{1}\right]$ and $a b \notin E\left(T^{\prime}\right)$, so $f_{0} f_{1} \in E\left(H^{\prime}\right)$. Add $f_{1}$ to the ordering $F^{\prime}$ (i.e., $f_{0}, f_{1}$ is the first segment of $F^{\prime}$ ).

The vertices $x, z_{5}, z_{6} \in X_{1} \backslash X_{0}=V\left(P_{a} \cup P_{b} \cup P_{z_{6}}\right) \backslash X_{0}$ and $x$ is the closer vertex to $v$ along $P_{z_{6}}$ then $z_{5}, z_{6}$ in this order. Thus $f_{1}=f(x)=f\left(z_{5}\right)=f\left(z_{6}\right)$ and


Figure 4.4. The Subtree $T^{\prime}\left[A^{\prime}\right]$ and the Ordering $\leq_{T^{\prime}}$
$z_{4}<_{L} x<_{L} z_{5}<_{L} z_{6}$. Let $f_{2}$ be the face of the cycle $b z_{6} z_{8} b$, so $X_{2}=P_{b} \cup P_{z_{6}} \cup P_{z_{8}}$. Since $b z_{6} \in\left(G^{\prime}\left[f_{1}\right] \cap G^{\prime}\left[f_{2}\right]\right)-T^{\prime}, f_{1} f_{2} \in E\left(H^{\prime}\right)$. Add $f_{2}$ to $F^{\prime}$. The vertices $z_{7}, z_{8} \in P_{z_{8}}-\left(X_{0} \cup X_{1}\right)$. Thus $f_{2}=f\left(z_{7}\right)=f\left(z_{8}\right)$ and $z_{6}<_{L} z_{7}<_{L} z_{8}$.

Let $f_{3}$ be the face of the cycle $z_{6} z_{8} v_{1} z_{6}$. The edge $z_{6} z_{8} \in\left(G^{\prime}\left[f_{2}\right] \cap G^{\prime}\left[f_{3}\right]\right)-T^{\prime}$, so $f_{2} f_{3} \in E\left(H^{\prime}\right)$. Add $f_{3}$ to $F^{\prime}$. As $z \in P_{v_{1}}-\left(X_{0} \cup X_{1} \cup X_{2}\right), f_{3}=f(z)$ and $z_{8}<_{L} z$. Let $f_{4}$ be the face of the cycle $z z_{6} v_{1} z$. Since $z_{6} v_{1} \in\left(G^{\prime}\left[f_{3}\right] \cap G^{\prime}\left[f_{4}\right]\right)-T^{\prime}$, $f_{3} f_{4} \in E\left(H^{\prime}\right)$. Add $f_{4}$ to $F^{\prime}$. Let $f_{5}$ be the face of the cycle $z z_{5} z_{6} z$. The edge $z z_{6} \in\left(G^{\prime}\left[f_{4}\right] \cap G^{\prime}\left[f_{5}\right]\right)-T^{\prime}$, so $f_{4} f_{5} \in E\left(H^{\prime}\right)$. Add $f_{5}$ to $F^{\prime}$. Let $f_{6}$ be the face of the cycle $z z_{5} z_{10} z$. Since $z z_{5} \in\left(G^{\prime}\left[f_{5}\right] \cap G^{\prime}\left[f_{6}\right]\right)-T^{\prime}, f_{5} f_{6} \in E\left(H^{\prime}\right)$. Add $f_{6}$ to $F^{\prime}$. The vertices $z_{9}, z_{10} \in P_{z_{10}}-\left(X_{0} \cup \ldots \cup X_{5}\right)$. So $f_{6}=f\left(z_{9}\right)=f\left(z_{10}\right)$ and $z<_{L} z_{9}<_{L} z_{10}$.

Now we proceed in the same fashion with less details. Let $f_{7}$ be the face of the


Figure 4.5. $f(x)$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x]$


Figure 4.6. $\quad f(z)$ and $\mathrm{Scol}_{1}[L, z]$
cycle $z z_{10} z_{11} z$. Add $f_{7}$ to $F^{\prime}$, this is possible because $f_{6} f_{7} \in E\left(H^{\prime}\right)$. Then $f_{7}=f\left(z_{11}\right)$ and $z_{10}<_{L} z_{11}$. Let $f_{8}$ be the face of the cycle $v_{2} z_{10} z_{11} v_{2}, f_{9}$ the face of the cycle $v_{2} v_{3} z_{11} v_{2}, f_{10}$ the face of the cycle $v_{2} v_{3} v_{5} v_{2}$. Add the segment $f_{8}, f_{9}, f_{10}$ to $F^{\prime}$, this is possible because $f_{7} f_{8} f_{9} f_{10} \subseteq H^{\prime}$. Then $f_{10}=f(w)$ and $z_{11}<_{L} w$. Let $f_{11}$ be the face of the cycle $v_{3} v_{4} v_{5} v_{3}, f_{12}$ the face of the cycle $v_{3} v_{4} z_{11} v_{3}, f_{13}$ the face of the cycle $w v_{4} z_{11} w, f_{14}$ the face of the cycle $w z_{11} z_{12} w$. Add the segment $f_{11}, f_{12}, f_{13}, f_{14}$ to $F^{\prime}$ (note that $f_{10} f_{11} f_{12} f_{13} f_{14} \subseteq H^{\prime}$ ). Then $f_{14}=f\left(z_{12}\right)$ and $w<_{L} z_{12}$.


Figure 4.7. $\quad f(w)$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w]$


Figure 4.8. $\quad f\left(w^{\prime}\right)$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right]$


Figure 4.9. $f\left(z^{\prime}\right), f(u), \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right]$ and $\operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$

Let $f_{15}$ be the face of the cycle $z_{11} z_{12} z_{14} z_{11}, f_{16}$ the face of $z_{12} z_{14} z_{15} z_{12}, f_{17}$ the face of $v_{6} z_{14} z_{15} v_{6}$. Add the segment $f_{15}, f_{16}, f_{17}$ to $F^{\prime}$. Then $f_{15}=f\left(z_{13}\right)=f\left(z_{14}\right)$, $f_{16}=f\left(z_{15}\right), f_{17}=f\left(w^{\prime}\right)$ and $z_{12}<_{L} z_{13}<_{L} z_{14}<_{L} z_{15}<_{L} w^{\prime}$. Let $f_{18}$ be the face of $w^{\prime} v_{6} z_{14} w^{\prime}, f_{19}$ the face of $w^{\prime} z_{13} z_{14} w^{\prime}, f_{20}$ the face of $w^{\prime} z_{13} z_{17} w^{\prime}, f_{21}$ the face of $w^{\prime} z_{17} z_{18} w^{\prime}$. Add the segment $f_{18}, f_{19}, f_{20}, f_{21}$ to $F^{\prime}$. Then $f_{20}=f\left(z_{16}\right)=f\left(z_{17}\right)$, $f_{21}=f\left(z_{18}\right)$ and $w^{\prime}<_{L} z_{16}<_{L} z_{17}<_{L} z_{18}$.

Let $f_{22}$ be the face of $z_{17} z_{18} z_{19} z_{17}, f_{23}$ the face of $v_{8} z_{18} z_{19} v_{8}$. Add the segment $f_{22}, f_{23}$ to $F^{\prime}$. Then $f_{22}=f\left(z^{\prime}\right)=f\left(z_{19}\right), f_{23}=f(u)$ and $z_{18}<_{L} z^{\prime}<_{L} z_{19}<_{L} u$. Now $F^{\prime}=f_{0}, \ldots f_{23}$. Extend $F^{\prime}$ to a depth-first search tree of $H^{\prime}$.

Now we are ready to show that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u]=26$. Theorem 4.3.1 tells us that $\operatorname{wcol}_{2}[L, u] \leq 26$. For each $s \in\left\{x, w, w^{\prime}, z, z^{\prime}\right\}, s<_{L} u$ and $s u \in E\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. So $\left\{u, x, w, w^{\prime}, z, z^{\prime}\right\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, u]$. For each $s \in\left\{z_{18}, z_{19}\right\}, s<_{L} u$ and there is a path of length two stu $\subseteq G^{\prime}$ with $u<_{L} t$. So $\left\{z_{18}, z_{19}\right\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{2}[L, u]$, see Figure 4.9 on page 94 . For each $s \in\left\{v, z_{1}, z_{2}, z_{3}, z_{4}\right\}, s<_{L} x$ and $s x \in E\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. So $\left\{v, z_{1}, z_{2}, z_{3}, z_{4}\right\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, x] \subseteq \operatorname{Wcol}_{2}[L, u]$, see Figure 4.5 on page 93. For each $s \in\left\{z_{5}, z_{6}, z_{7}, z_{8}\right\}, s<_{L} z$ and $s z \in E\left(G^{\prime}\right) . \quad$ So $\left\{z_{5}, z_{6}, z_{7}, z_{8}\right\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, z] \subseteq$ $\mathrm{Wcol}_{2}[L, u]$, see Figure 4.6 on page 93. For each $s \in\left\{z_{9}, z_{10}, z_{11}\right\}, s<_{L} w$ and $s w \in E\left(G^{\prime}\right) . \quad$ So $\left\{z_{9}, z_{10}, z_{11}\right\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{1}[L, w] \subseteq \mathrm{Wcol}_{2}[L, u]$, see Figure 4.7 on page 94. For each $s \in\left\{z_{12}, z_{13}, z_{14}, z_{15}\right\}, s<_{L} w^{\prime}$ and $s w^{\prime} \in E\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. So $\left\{z_{12}, z_{13}, z_{14}, z_{15}\right\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, w^{\prime}\right] \subseteq \mathrm{W}_{\operatorname{col}_{2}}[L, u]$, see Figure 4.8 on page 94. For each $s \in\left\{z_{16}, z_{17}\right\}, s<_{L} z^{\prime}$ and $s z^{\prime} \in E\left(G^{\prime}\right)$. So $\left\{z_{16}, z_{17}\right\} \subseteq \operatorname{Scol}_{1}\left[L, z^{\prime}\right] \subseteq \operatorname{Wcol}_{2}[L, u]$, see Figure 4.9 on page 94.

Thus $\left\{u, x, w, w^{\prime}, z, z^{\prime}, v, z_{1}, \ldots z_{19}\right\} \subseteq \mathrm{Wcol}_{2}[L, u]$, those vertices are colored blue in Figure 4.3 on page 90. This shows that $\mathrm{wcol}_{2}[L, u]=26$.

## Chapter 5

## A NEW CHARACTERIZATION OF NOWHERE DENSE CLASSES

We give a new characterization of monotone nowhere dense classes by proving that the converse of Lemma 1.5.13 is also true. We will use a technique similar to the one used in Theorem 1.5.9.

Lemma. (Lemma 1.5.13) Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a nowhere dense class of graphs. Then for every $r \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon>0$ there exists an integer $n_{0}$ such that for every graph $G \in \mathcal{C}$ with $|V(G)| \geq n_{0}$ we have

$$
\operatorname{dom}_{r}(G) \leq|V(G)|^{2 \epsilon} \alpha_{2 r}(G)
$$

We first construct a somewhere dense class of graphs $\mathcal{C}^{\prime}$ : For every positive integers $n \geq 4$ and $s \geq 1$, let $G_{\mathrm{n}, 2 \mathrm{~s}-1}$ be the graph obtained from $K_{n}$ by subdividing each edge $2 s-1$ times. Let Y be the set of vertices with degree $n-1$ in $G_{n, 2 s-1}$; and let $X$ be the set of the middle vertices of the paths corresponding to the edges of $K_{n}$ in $G_{n, 2 s-1}$. Let $Q_{n, 2 s-1}$ be the graph obtained from $G_{\mathrm{n}, 2 \mathrm{~s}-1}$ by adding a new vertex $v$ adjacent to all the vertices in $X$. Dvorak [8] showed that $\operatorname{dom}_{s}\left(Q_{n, 2 s-1}\right) \geq \frac{n}{2}$ and $\alpha_{2 s}\left(Q_{n, 2 s-1}\right) \leq 2$.

Let $G$ and $H$ be graphs. We write $H \preceq_{r}^{t} G$ if $G$ contains a topological minor of $H$ where each edge is subdivided at most $r$ times. From Definition 1.5.1 and since every graph $H$ is a subgraph of $K_{|H|}$, we have the following equivalent definition of somewhere dense class. A class of graphs $\mathcal{C}$ is somewhere dense if there exists $r \geq 1$ such that for all graphs $H$ there exists a graph $G \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $H \preceq_{r}^{t} G$.

Now we are ready to prove the result.

Theorem 5.0.1. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a monotone class of graphs. The class $\mathcal{C}$ is nowhere dense if and only if (*) for every $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon>0$ there exists $n_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for every graph $G \in \mathcal{C}$ with $|G| \geq n_{0}$ we have

$$
\operatorname{dom}_{k}(G) \leq|G|^{2 \epsilon} \alpha_{2 k}(G) .
$$

Proof. The forward implication is Lemma 1.5.13. We prove the backward implication. Assume for a contradiction that $(*)$ holds, but $\mathcal{C}$ is somewhere dense. Then there exists $s \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all graphs $H$ there exists a graph $G \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $H \preceq_{s}^{t} G$.

Let $A=\{r(r+2): r \in[s]\} \cup\{s\}$. For every $k \in A$ and $\epsilon=\frac{1}{20},\left(^{*}\right)$ returns $n_{k}$. Let $n_{0}=\max _{k \in A}\left\{n_{k}, 2 s, 64\right\}$ and let $n^{\prime}=\binom{n_{0}}{2} \cdot(2 s-1)+n_{0}+1$; from Ramsey Theorem, there exists an $n^{\prime \prime} \geq 2$ such that every $n^{\prime \prime}$-set $X$ has a monochromatic $n^{\prime}$-subset with respect to any $(s+1)$-coloring of $[X]^{2}$. Let $G \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $K_{n^{\prime \prime}} \preceq_{s}^{t} G$. Let $G^{\prime}$ be the depth- $s$ topological minor of $K_{n^{\prime \prime}}$ contained in $G$. Since $\mathcal{C}$ is monotone, $G^{\prime}$ is also in $\mathcal{C}$.

Let $P_{u v}$ denote the path corresponding to the edge $u v \in K_{n^{\prime \prime}}$ in $G^{\prime}$. Define the coloring $c: E\left(K_{n^{\prime \prime}}\right) \rightarrow[s] \cup\{0\}$ such that $c(u v)=\left\|P_{u v}\right\|-1$. Ramsey Theorem tells us that $K_{n^{\prime \prime}}$ contains a clique of size $n^{\prime}$ (i.e., $K_{n^{\prime}}$ ) such that $c(e)=s^{\prime}$ for every $e \in K_{n^{\prime}}$ where $s^{\prime} \in[s] \cup\{0\}$.

Case 1: $s^{\prime}=0$.
Then $K_{n^{\prime}} \subseteq G^{\prime} \in \mathcal{C}$; as $\mathcal{C}$ is monotone, $K_{n^{\prime}} \in \mathcal{C}$ too. Since $\left|Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}\right|=\binom{n_{0}}{2} \cdot(2 s-1)+$ $n_{0}+1=n^{\prime}, Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1} \subseteq K_{n^{\prime}}$. Thus $Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1} \in \mathcal{C}$. As $\left|Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}\right| \geq n_{0}, Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}$ satisfies $\left(^{*}\right)$. So

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dom}_{s}\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}\right) & \leq\left|Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}\right|^{2 \epsilon} \alpha_{2 s}\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}\right) \\
& \leq\left(n_{0}^{3}\right)^{2 \epsilon} \alpha_{2 s}\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}\right) \\
& \leq \sqrt{n_{0}} \alpha_{2 s}\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This contradicts the fact that $\alpha_{2 s}\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}\right) \leq 2$ and $\operatorname{dom}_{s}\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s-1}\right) \geq \frac{n_{0}}{2}$
Case 2: $s^{\prime}$ is a positive integer.

Since $\left|Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1}\right|=\binom{n_{0}}{2} \cdot\left(2 s^{\prime}-1\right)+n_{0}+1 \leq n^{\prime}, Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1} \subseteq K_{n^{\prime}}$. Let $H^{\prime}$ be the graph obtained from $K_{n^{\prime}}$ by subdividing each edge $s^{\prime}$ times, and let $Q^{\prime}$ be the graph obtained from $Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1}$ by subdividing each edge $s^{\prime}$ times. Then $Q^{\prime} \subseteq H^{\prime} \subseteq G^{\prime}$; since $\mathcal{C}$ is monotone, $Q^{\prime}$ is a graph in $\mathcal{C}$.

From assumption we have

$$
\operatorname{dom}_{s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+2\right)}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) \leq\left|Q^{\prime}\right|^{2 \epsilon} \alpha_{2 s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+2\right)}\left(Q^{\prime}\right)
$$

Note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|Q^{\prime}\right| & =\left|Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1}\right|+\left|E\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1}\right)\right| \cdot s^{\prime} \\
& \leq\binom{ n_{0}}{2} \cdot\left(2 s^{\prime}-1\right)+n_{0}+1+\binom{n_{0}}{2} \cdot\left(2 s^{\prime}+1\right) s^{\prime} \\
& \leq 2 s^{\prime} n_{0}^{2}+3 s^{\prime 2} n_{0}^{2} \\
& \leq n_{0}^{3}+n_{0}^{4} \\
& <2 n_{0}^{4} \\
& <n_{0}^{5}
\end{aligned}
$$

So $\left|Q^{\prime}\right|^{2 \epsilon}<\sqrt{n_{0}} \leq \frac{n_{0}}{8}$.
In the rest of the proof, we will show that $\alpha_{2 s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+2\right)}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) \leq 2$. and $\operatorname{dom}_{s^{\prime}}\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1}\right) \leq$ $2 \operatorname{dom}_{s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+2\right)}\left(Q^{\prime}\right)$ which gives a contradiction with the fact that $\operatorname{dom}_{s^{\prime}}\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1}\right) \geq \frac{n_{0}}{2}$.

Denote the set of vertices of degree $n_{0}-1$ in $Q^{\prime}$ by $I$; and let $I_{s^{\prime}}$ be the set of vertices in $Q^{\prime}$ within distance at most $s^{\prime}$ from some vertex in $I$. The distance between any two vertices in $I_{s^{\prime}}$ in the graph $Q^{\prime}$ is at most $2 s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+2\right)$. In addition, the distance between any two vertices in $V\left(Q^{\prime}\right) \backslash I_{s^{\prime}}$ is at most $2 s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+1\right)$. Thus $\alpha_{2 s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+2\right)}\left(Q^{\prime}\right) \leq 2$.

Let $B \subseteq Q^{\prime}$ such that $|B|=\operatorname{dom}_{s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+2\right)}\left(Q^{\prime}\right)$ and every vertex $v \in Q^{\prime}$ is within distance at most $s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+2\right)$ from some vertex $u \in B$ in $Q^{\prime}$. Let $C$ be the set of vertices obtained from $B$ by replacing each subdividing vertex $w$ with the closest two branch vertices in $Q^{\prime}$. Then $C \subseteq Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1}$ and $|C| \leq 2|B|$. In addition, every vertex
$v \in Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1}$ is within distance at most $s^{\prime}$ from some vertex $u \in C$. Hence,

$$
\operatorname{dom}_{s^{\prime}}\left(Q_{n_{0}, 2 s^{\prime}-1}\right) \leq 2 \operatorname{dom}_{s^{\prime}\left(s^{\prime}+2\right)}\left(Q^{\prime}\right)
$$

## REFERENCES

[1] G. Agnarsson and M. M. Halldórsson. Coloring powers of planar graphs. SIAM J. Discrete Math., 16(4):651-662, 2003.
[2] M. O. Albertson, G. G. Chappell, H. A. Kierstead, A. Kündgen, and R. Ramamurthi. Coloring with no 2-colored $P_{4}$ 's. Electron. J. Combin., 11(1):Research Paper 26, 13, 2004.
[3] T. Bartnicki, J. Grytczuk, H. A. Kierstead, and X. Zhu. The map-coloring game. Amer. Math. Monthly, 114(9):793-803, 2007.
[4] O. V. Borodin. The decomposition of graphs into degenerate subgraphs. Diskret. Analiz., (Vyp. 28 Metody Diskretnogo Analiza v Teorii Grafov i Logiceskih Funkcii):3-11, 78, 1976.
[5] G. Chen and R. H. Schelp. Graphs with linearly bounded Ramsey numbers. J. Combin. Theory Ser. B, 57(1):138-149, 1993.
[6] A. Dawar and S. Kreutzer. Domination problems in nowhere-dense classes of graphs. In Foundations of software technology and theoretical computer scienceFSTTCS 2009. Volume 4, LIPIcs. Leibniz Int. Proc. Inform. Pages 157-168. Schloss Dagstuhl. Leibniz-Zent. Inform., Wadern, 2009.
[7] R. Diestel. Graph theory, volume 173 of Graduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer, Heidelberg, fourth edition, 2010, pages xviii +437 .
[8] Z. Dvořák. Constant-factor approximation of the domination number in sparse graphs. European J. Combin., 34(5):833-840, 2013.
[9] Z. Dvořák, A. Kabela, and T. Kaiser. Planar graphs have two-coloring number at most 8. J. Combin. Theory Ser. B, 130:144-157, 2018.
[10] Z. Dvořák, D. Král, and R. Thomas. Deciding first-order properties for sparse graphs. In 2010 IEEE 51st Annual Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science, pages 133-142. IEEE, 2010.
[11] M. Grohe, S. Kreutzer, R. Rabinovich, S. Siebertz, and K. Stavropoulos. Colouring and covering nowhere dense graphs. In Graph-theoretic concepts in computer science. Volume 9224, Lecture Notes in Comput. Sci. Pages 325-338. Springer, Berlin, 2016.
[12] M. Grohe, S. Kreutzer, and S. Siebertz. Deciding first-order properties of nowhere dense graphs. J. ACM, 64(3):Art. 17, 32, 2017.
[13] B. Grünbaum. Acyclic colorings of planar graphs. Israel J. Math., 14:390-408, 1973.
[14] J. van den Heuvel, P. Ossona de Mendez, D. Quiroz, R. Rabinovich, and S. Siebertz. On the generalised colouring numbers of graphs that exclude a fixed minor. European J. Combin., 66:129-144, 2017.
[15] J. van den Heuvel, H.A. Kierstead, and D. A. Quiroza. Chromatic numbers of exact distance graphs. Journal of Combinatorial Theory, Series B, 2018. To appear, doi.org/10.1016/j.jctb.2018.05.007.
[16] G. Joret, P. Micek, P. Ossona de Mendez, and V. Wiechert. Nowhere dense graph classes and dimension. Combinatorica, 39(5):1055-1079, 2019.
[17] G. Joret, P. Micek, and V. Wiechert. Sparsity and dimension. In Proceedings of the Twenty-Seventh Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms, pages 1804-1813. ACM, New York, 2016.
[18] R. M. Karp. Reducibility among combinatorial problems. In Complexity of computer computations (Proc. Sympos., IBM Thomas J. Watson Res. Center, Yorktown Heights, N.Y., 1972), pages 85-103, 1972.
[19] H. A. Kierstead. A simple competitive graph coloring algorithm. J. Combin. Theory Ser. B, 78(1):57-68, 2000.
[20] H. A. Kierstead, A. Kündgen, and C. Timmons. Star coloring bipartite planar graphs. J. Graph Theory, 60(1):1-10, 2009.
[21] H. A. Kierstead and W. T. Trotter. Competitive colorings of oriented graphs. Electron. J. Combin., 8(2):Research Paper 12, 15, 2001. In honor of Aviezri Fraenkel on the occasion of his 70th birthday.
[22] H. A. Kierstead and W. T. Trotter. Planar graph coloring with an uncooperative partner. J. Graph Theory, 18(6):569-584, 1994.
[23] H. A. Kierstead and D. Yang. Orderings on graphs and game coloring number. Order, 20(3):255-264 (2004), 2003.
[24] H. Kierstead, B. Mohar, S. Špacapan, D. Yang, and X. Zhu. The two-coloring number and degenerate colorings of planar graphs. SIAM J. Discrete Math., 23(3):1548-1560, 2009.
[25] H. Kierstead and D. Yang. Two applications of generalizes coloring numbers. private communication.
[26] F. Kramer and H. Kramer. Ein färbungsproblem der knotenpunkte eines graphen bezüglich der distanz p. Rev. Roumaine Math. Pures Appl., 14:1031-1038, 1969.
[27] F. Kramer and H. Kramer. Un probleme de coloration des sommets d'un graphe. C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris A, 268:46-48, 1969.
[28] S. Kreutzer. Algorithmic meta-theorems. In Finite and algorithmic model theory. Volume 379, London Math. Soc. Lecture Note Ser. Pages 177-270. Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 2011.
[29] C. Lenzen and R. Wattenhofer. Minimum dominating set approximation in graphs of bounded arboricity. In Nancy A. Lynch and Alexander A. Shvartsman, editors, Distributed Computing, pages 510-524, Berlin, Heidelberg. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2010.
[30] J. Nešetřil and P. Ossona de Mendez. On nowhere dense graphs. European J. Combin., 32(4):600-617, 2011.
[31] J. Nešetřil and P. Ossona de Mendez. Sparsity, volume 28 of Algorithms and Combinatorics. Springer, Heidelberg, 2012, pages xxiv+457. Graphs, structures, and algorithms.
[32] D. Peleg. Distance-dependent distributed directories. eng. Information and Computation, 103(2):270-298, 1993.
[33] D. Peleg. Distributed computing, volume 5 of SIAM Monographs on Discrete Mathematics and Applications. Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics (SIAM), Philadelphia, PA, 2000, pages xvi +343 . A locality-sensitive approach.
[34] R. Raz and S. Safra. A sub-constant error-probability low-degree test, and a sub-constant error-probability PCP characterization of NP. In STOC '97 (El Paso, TX), pages 475-484. ACM, New York, 1999.
[35] G. Wegner. Graphs with Given Diameter and a Colouring Problem. Technical report, University of Dortmund, 1977.
[36] J. Wu and X. Zhu. Lower bounds for the game colouring number of partial $k$-trees and planar graphs. Discrete Math., 308(12):2637-2642, 2008.
[37] X. Zhu. Colouring graphs with bounded generalized colouring number. Discrete Math., 309(18):5562-5568, 2009.
[38] X. Zhu. Refined activation strategy for the marking game. J. Combin. Theory Ser. B, 98(1):1-18, 2008.

